This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

1816. With a particular description of a great part of Mexico, or New Spain. Containing, a particular account of thirteen different tribes of Indians, describing their manners, customs, &c. *Elizabeth town, N. J.*, printed for the Author, 1816. *Boards, uncut, library stamp on title, rare* 8° £2 2*s* (22521)

THE

NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

PRESENTED BY

Hon. George L. Rives
30 Jan. 1914

HT
KER

# TRAVELS

THROUGH

THE WESTERN INTERIOR

OF THE

UNITED STATES,

FROM THE YEAR 1808 UP TO THE YEAR 1816,

WITH A

PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION OF A GREAT PART OF

MEXICO, OR NEW-SPAIN.

CONTAINING,

A particular account of thirteen different tribes of Indians through which the author passed; describing their Manners, Customs, &c.; with some account of a tribe whose customs are similar to those of the ancient Welch.

INTERSPERSED WITH

VALUABLE HISTORICAL INFORMATION, DRAWN FROM THE LATEST AUTHORITIES.

BY HENRY KER.

*ELIZABETHTOWN, N. J.*

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
R 1914 L

*DISTRICT OF NEW-JERSEY, SS:*

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the thirtieth day of May, in the fortieth year of the Independence of the United States of America, Henry Ker, of the said district, hath deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as author, in the words following, to wit:

"Travels through the Western Interior of the United States, from the year 1808 up to the year 1816. With a particular description of a great part of Mexico, or New-Spain. Containing a particular account of thirteen different tribes of Indians through which the author passed; describing their manners, customs, &c.; with some account of a tribe whose customs are similar to those of the ancient Welch. Interspersed with valuable Historical information, drawn from the latest authorities. By Henry Ker."

In conformity to an act of the congress of the United States, entitled, "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned:" and also to the act, entitled, "An act supplementary to the act, entitled, An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching, historical and other prints."

ROBT. BOGGS,
Clerk of the District of New-Jersey.

NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ERRATA.

Page 63, bottom line, for, brig Dolphin, read, schooner Friendship.

# PREFACE.

THE author begs leave to offer an explanation of some parts of the work, which he deems necessary for it to be well understood. When he first contemplated writing a history of his travels, his intention was to have given a correct diary of every transaction which might occur throughout his tour: but this he soon found to be impracticable. The notes which he took were many of them injured by the weather and other accidents which occurred on the journey, and, although the circumstances were fresh in his memory, the exact date could not be ascertained; he has, therefore, introduced the dates where it was in his power, and where they were not to be had, left it to the judgment and candour of the reader to supply the omission.

Some apology is likewise necessary for the style of the work, which the author is fully sensible is in many places

It is hoped a candid and judicious public will select from the work such information as may be correct, and that the remainder, if any, will not be imputed to wilful misrepresentation, but to the ignorance of the author, and the impracticability of his procuring correct information.

# CONTENTS.


CHAP. I.

Page

Author's birth and education—General description of London—Author departs for the United States—Arrives at Charleston—Travels into the interior—Large rattlesnake - 9

CHAP. II.

Author descends the river French Broad—Description of the river—Lead mines—Description of Tennessee river—Chickasaw Indians—Ohio river—Grandeur of the Missisippi—Causes which render its navigation so dangerous - 21

CHAP. III.

Alarm of the author for his safety, with the melancholy fate of one of his men—General observations on the country—Description of the Osark Indians—Arrival at Natches—Pleasing appearance of the sugar plantations - - - 27

CHAP. IV.

Arrival at New-Orleans—Description of the city—Its rapid improvement—Causes why it is sickly - - - - 46

CHAP. V.

Author goes to Jamaica—Leaves Jamaica for Port au Prince—Description of a singular cave—Author takes passage for the United States, and is shipwrecked—Melancholy death of Capt. Crasewell—Author returns to Kingston in Jamaica—Departs for the United States, and arrives at New-Orleans 51

CHAP. VI.

Author leaves New-Orleans—Ascends the Red river—Arrives at Natchitoches—Beauty of the country—Arrives among the

to Red river—Arrives among the Ilisees Indians—Copper mine—Indian hunt—Author parts with his boat and proceeds by land to the source of Red river - - - - - 90

CHAP. VIII.

More particular description of the Ilisees—Danger of the author from wild beasts—Arrives at a settlement of Spaniards and Indians—Story of my Spanish host—Parathee Indians - 105

CHAP. IX.

Difficulties in crossing the river Gagundo—Alligators—Description of the Badies Indians—General remarks on the nature of the savages - - - - - - - 115

CHAP. X.

Salt springs—Description of a large snake which the author killed—Indian hunting camp—Author loses his rifle - 130

CHAP. XI.

Author arrives at the town of the Yarotees—Is requested to afford assistance in a war—Weapons of the Yarotees - 139

CHAP. XII.

Success of the Indian enterprise—Author leaves the Yarotees—Similarity between many of their religious ceremonies and those of the ancient Jews—Comparison of ancient prophecies 145

CHAP. XIII.

Author encounters a bear—Observations on the decline of the Spanish monarchy—Author kills an elk - - - 153

CHAP. XIV.

Author arrives among the Mnacedeus Indians, and accompanies them on a hunt—Their consternation at seeing firearms 159

CHAP. XV.

Author visits a larger village of the Mnacedeus—Observes strong marks of their Welch origin—Finds considerable platina in their possession—Feigns sickness—Curious treatment 167

CHAP. XVI.

Author is introduced to a white man—His account of himself—Author gains his confidence and is shown the platina mine 173

CHAP. XVII.

CHAP. XVIII.

General observations on the country—Author meets a party of Indians and accompanies them to their camp—Their superiority to the Mnacedeus—Description of odoriferous shrubs and trees found on the mountains—Delay in the journey 192

CHAP. XIX.

Author enters the Mexican empire—General account of the province of Tula—Author visits a monastery—Xilotepec - 200

CHAP. XX.

Particular description of the city of Xilotepec—Description of a natural bridge similar to that in Virginia—Description of a cave—Author arrives at the city of Mexico - - 209

CHAP. XXI.

General description of Mexico and its inhabitants - - 218

CHAP. XXII.

Description of the vale of Mexico—Climate, volcanoes, rivers, lakes, and mineral productions of the country - - 225

CHAP. XXIII.

Vegetable productions of Mexico—Description of a tree which produces liquid amber—Description of animals peculiar to Mexico—Great variety of birds - - - - 234

CHAP. XXIV.

Description of reptiles found in Mexico—Zoophytes - 245

CHAP. XXV.

Particular description of the inhabitants of the Mexican empire —Inhumanity of the first conquerors of Mexico—Humane interposition of Las Casas—Illiberality of the government 250

CHAP. XXVI.

Review of the benefits which have resulted to Europeans from the discovery of America—Expedition of Cortez - 263

CHAP. XXVII.

Author's further residence in Mexico, being unsafe, he leaves

CHAP. XXIX.

Author leaves the cavern—Reflections on his former situation and present prospects—Arrival at Natchitoches - - 293

CHAP. XXX.

Departure for the Tuckapau and Apalusa towns—Chickasaw Indians—Nashville—Enchanted mountain - - - 299

CHAP. XXXI.

Knoxville—Medical spring—Abingdon—Georgetown - 309

CHAP. XXXII.

Lexington—Mammoth bones—Tradition of the Shawanese 318

CHAP. XXXIII.

General information respecting the western country - 325

CHAP. XXXIV.

White Court house—Choctaw Indians—St. Stephens—Mobile—Pensacola—Observations on the soil of West-Florida 328

CHAP. XXXV.

Author starts for the northern parts of the United States - 336

CHAP. XXXVI.

Fort Hawkins—Remains of the ingenuity of the Indians—Augusta—Manner in which the Georgians spend their time 341

CHAP. XXXVII.

Columbia—Camden—Pedee river—Fayetteville - - 347

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Description of the soil, climate, &c. of North-Carolina, with the character of its inhabitants - - - - - - 354

CHAP. XXXIX.

Wilmington, N. C.—Author sails for Philadelphia—Wilmington, Del. - - - - - - - - - - 357

CHAP. XL.

General description of the city of Philadelphia - - 364

CHAP. XLI.

# TRAVELS, &c.

## CHAP. I.

*Author's birth and education—Disposition for a wandering life—London—General description of it—Public buildings—St. James's Palace—Schools—Poverty of the poorer class—Departure for Charleston—Intelligence and hospitality of the inhabitants—Travels in the interior—Orangeburgh—Columbia—Abbeville—Greenville—Bunkum—Warm Springs—Large rattlesnake—Arrival at Newport.*

THE author thinks it necessary, before he commences a detailed account of his journey, to say something relative to his friends and family. When any one intrudes himself upon public notice, every person will naturally enquire, Whence came he? Who were his family? &c. These queries I shall endeavour to answer, as soon and as satisfactorily as possible.

I was born in Boston, in the state of Massachusetts. My father, when I was at an early age, removed to Lon-

school, and received such an education as would fit me for common business. My propensity for a wandering life, however, was very strong, and I found it impossible to content myself in the dull routine of employments which had not novelty to recommend them to the attention of a mind, already dazzled by the glowing description which I received of that part of southern America which had been but superficially explored. My mind already roamed over a country, which was said to be rich in every thing which could render the life of man agreeable, and superabundantly contained that which is now considered as the standard of merit, and without which, let our talents and virtue be ever so great, we are under the necessity of standing in the back ground, and giving way to one who can count more thousands than ourselves, and see him placed in the seat of honour, and complimented with the greatest respect. Educated in what has been called the metropolis of Europe, it may not be thought improper that I should give a general account of it.

London, the capital of the British empire, is asserted by Mr. Pinkerton to be the largest city in Europe; whilst others are disposed to allow Paris not only to be the largest in point of population, but in the extent of ground which it covers. Without entering into any discussion on this subject, it is certain that it was a very flourishing city in the time of Nero, and when the Roman empire was at its zenith of prosperity; it received some considerable privileges under the Emperor Augustus, and he not

considerable privileges. In the time of Henry VIII. when almost every city lost its charter, that of London was confirmed, and its citizens protected. It includes the suburbs of Westminster and Southwark, which, it is thought, will be the handsomest part of the city. The streets are for the most part narrow, and the general appearance irregular. Had the improvements which were suggested by Sir Christopher Wren, after the great fire of 1666, been followed, it would have been the most elegant and beautiful city in Europe; but the parsimony of its citizens prevented them, at that time, from making such improvements as would have been highly beneficial at the present period. Its docks, and other conveniences for commerce, are excellent, and admit of very little improvement. The London dock is a fine harbour for vessels, and under such excellent regulations as render it one of the finest places in the world for foreign ships which are lading and unlading. At six in the evening the gates are shut, which is notified by the ringing of a bell, and no person is allowed to go out or come in, until a certain hour in the morning. At nine o'clock the lights on board of each ship are required to be put out: a non-compliance subjects to the penalty of five pounds. Watchmen are stationed at proper places during the night, and every thing is calculated for the security and protection of property.

The public buildings of London are many, and some of them very convenient and elegant. The Royal Exchange is said to be the largest and most convenient pub-

it is, that at particular hours you may find merchants from almost all parts of the globe; Japanese, Chinese, Grecians, Turks, Spaniards, Frenchmen, and Americans, mingling and conversing as familiarly together as though they had been born neighbours. The British merchants are said to be punctual and honourable in their dealings, but are too apt to plunge into speculations beyond their capital and become involved in debt. Hence arise those large failures of which we almost every day hear, and which are often very fatal to many industrious and worthy men: but, however, the instances are rare, where a British merchant fails for the purpose of defrauding his creditors, and such is their liberality, that they generally give him an opportunity of compromising on liberal terms.

The Mansion House is a large stone building, which has nothing very remarkable to recommend it to the attention of travellers, except a gallery of paintings, in which are some well executed pieces; among which is one representing our Saviour on the cross, and another representing him talking with the Samaritan, &c. Many of the rooms are spacious and elegant, particularly the ball-room; and some of them furnished with taste and elegance.

Guildhall is a large and spacious edifice, where most of the public business in the city is done, and where the different incorporated bodies have their rooms, for the purpose of transacting business: there are a number of these

The places of public worship are numerous, being upwards of five hundred in number, some of them very elegant, and all worthy of notice. St. Paul's, being the most remarkable, will be particularly mentioned. It was built by Sir Christopher Wren, after an exact model of the one at Rome, and is the most surprising monument of one man's ingenuity, of any thing in the world. It is built in the form of a cross, of white freestone; it is adorned at the corners with the figures of the four Evangelists, and over the doors, St. Paul, as large as life, who is an elegant representation of many fine monuments in this country. In the body of the church are British government edifices, reared by the munificence of those who fell in the service, for the purpose of doing honour to the memory of those who died in her service. Among them is one erected in Egypt, a monumental statue of the celebrated philanthropist honour of Major General Abercrombie, who fell monument, a most masterly piece of sculpture, which does extreme honour to the artist who designed and executed it. A Howard, is here erected, and will transmit to posterity the virtues and benevolence of a man, who went about doing good, and spent his whole life in endeavours to ameliorate the distresses of the most wretched and miserable part of creation. Another, in the centre of the church, is erecting, to perpetuate the memory of the immortal Nelson, who fell at the battle of Trafalgar. He certainly attained to a high degree of naval skill, and had not been for his excessive pride, might justly have been called *great*.

St. James's Palace, where the court of the present reigning monarch is kept, has very little in its exterior to recommend it to a traveller who is a connoisseur in architecture. It is an irregular building, and of different orders of architecture, having had many additions made

to it by the different reigning sovereigns: the interior, however, is furnished in a style of magnificence which makes ample amends for its exterior. The rooms are spacious, and some are wainscotted with English oak, which gives them a very novel and handsome appearance. Those parts of the house which are occupied by his Majesty, are distinguished for their plainness: indeed, this monarch has never shown a strong desire for parade and magnificence, being contented to be led by those who are placed about his person, and to yield a blind obedience to the directions of his ministers. The buildings situated around it, and at the west end of the town, are distinguished for their elegance, and for the spaciousness of their rooms. Luxury is carried to a very great *height* in this city, not only in the dress and equipage, but in every thing, however minute, which is found in a nobleman's house. The Duke of Portland built a palace, sometime since, that cost 250,000*l.* sterling!

The public seminaries for the instruction of youth are numerous, and many of them well supported: there are about five thousand schools, one half of which may be considered as supported by the different public bodies, churches, &c.

The great numbers of paupers which daily infest the streets, are a great annoyance to passengers, at the same time that they prove the excessive wretchedness and misery which has pervaded the British capital. There are one hundred and twenty-two asylums for the poor.

generally, disabled soldiers or sailors, who, having lost an arm or a leg, are obliged to beg their bread from door to door. Such is the fate of men, who, having toiled and bled in their country's service, are now reduced to the greatest distress. Although government *pretends* to provide for them, the provision is swallowed up by the multitude of officers who are placed over them, and very little of it reaches the poor wretches for whom it is collected.—But enough of misery and distress: I turn with pleasure to contemplate a government which has uniformly supported the unfortunate, and which will ever be the protector of those who expose themselves in the "battle's front" for their country's good. The United States have ever displayed a generosity in that respect, which it would have been much to the credit of Europe had she generally followed.

In a city containing six hundred thousand people, it is to be expected that there should be all gradations, from the extreme of virtue, to that of vice; and it is calculated that there are upwards of twenty-six thousand prostitutes, and more than fifty thousand men who get their living by gambling and theft. I shall make no comments, but leave it to the reader to determine, whether a nation can be happy which has more than one-eighth of the population of its capital made up of wretches who are unfit for civilized society, and not worthy to be considered as any other than the dregs of mankind.

Being desirous of an expeditious passage to the United States, I engaged my passage on board the ship Bedford,

ıs, we took our departure from the land on the
April, 1808, and steered for Charleston. The
days of our voyage were pleasant, and nothing
ble took place until we made the Western Islands,
severe gale came on, which lasted four days; it
:h extreme violence, and the Captain informed me
h gales were frequent in these latitudes, owing, as
ined, to the air from off the Atlantic rushing for-
supply the place of the rarefied air in and about
stern Islands. The weather soon became mode-
d we arrived at Charleston after a passage of
'e days.

now arrived in a country which gave me birth,
ı which, ever since I was an infant, I had been
My feelings were wrought up to the highest
expectation, and they were not disappointed: I
e people hospitable and intelligent, and every way
to give me that information for which I sought.
cash about two thousand dollars, and immedi-
about purchasing a horse and such other articles
ıld want on my journey, determining to make no
its prosecution.

s my determination to visit some unexplored
quest of the hidden stores of nature, with which,
reasonable to suppose, the country abounded.
ny stay here, which was about two months, I
pportunity of discovering the different disposi-
the people. Some intriguing characters took
ins to lead me into the theory of gaming; but
afterwards they were more willing to swindle me
actical part. After losing a little in this way, I

On the 10th of August I left Charleston. The weather, being extremely warm, was to me very unpleasant: but knowing that I must become a constant companion of heat and cold, fatigue, hunger, thirst, and toil, I contented myself with the anticipation of hereafter attributing something to myself, or being richly stored with experience. I that day travelled about twenty miles, and at sunset put up with a gentleman, by whom I was well treated. After breakfast, I set out with an old man, who was travelling on the same road. From him I received much information. His knowledge was experimental; and he gave me new plans to act upon, which I have since found advantageous. In him I could perceive the workings of anxiety for myself. My ardour and impatience, he had penetration to see, would frequently expose me to those impositions, sufferings, and dangers, inevitably attendant upon an inexperienced traveller, among rude and inhospitable men, and furious savages. Nothing worthy of note occurred during my journey to Orangeburgh, a small town containing forty or fifty houses, a court-house, and goal: it is about ninety miles from Charleston, and stands on the east side of the north branch of the Edisto river. From thence I steered my course to Columbia, a beautiful town situated in Kershaw county, about half a mile from the Congaree river, on the east side, just below the confluence of Saluda and Broad rivers. It is regularly built, and contains about two hundred houses, many of which are neat and of brick, also a state-house: it is one hundred and twenty miles north northwest of Charleston, and is the seat of government for the state of South-Carolina, in latitude

ed with the bilious fever, which confined me to my room for thirty days, and was attended with considerable expense.

About the middle of September I again set out, satisfied with having had a change of climate. After travelling two days I arrived at Abbeyville, a small village on a fertile spot of ground. Such spots I found to be very few during my journey over a sandy, barren waste of country. In this neighbourhood are many good farmers, who raise cotton, tobacco, &c. From this place I went to Greenville, a pleasant town, situated on the west side of the Great Pedee river; it contains about fifty houses, besides a court-house, goal, and academy; it is ninety miles northeast of Columbia. Here I staid a few days at the house of Col. Alston, a gentleman of respectability, from whom I received much valuable information relative to the adjacent states, their commercial interests, enterprising spirit of the Americans, &c.. He spoke highly of the country west of the Missisippi, wishing me great success in my undertaking. During my stay here I was free of expense, and under the direction of one, whose knowledge was extensive and useful.

From Greenville, I went to Bunkum in North-Carolina, a small town subject to different titles, such as Upper and Lower Hog-thief, Scurmagefill, and Scuffletown. Whether these terms correspond with the general character of the inhabitants, or not, I am unable to determine. Here are a court-house and goal, and many good farms adjacent. From this place I steered my course for the Warm Springs, a distance of about forty miles, through a broken, mountainous, and hilly country,

Mr. Nelson's, the proprietor of the springs, who keeps a commodious house for the purpose of entertaining visitors, and had, at the time of my arrival, upwards of eighty boarders, afflicted with different diseases. How bountiful is nature, in opening her medical treasures to oppose and combat the afflictions laid on the human system. I was informed of several wonderful cures effected by these springs. An elderly gentleman, who was afflicted with the palsy, and had been for ten years a burthen to himself, and an object of sorrow to his friends, reduced to a mere skeleton and seemed to be hovering over the grave; on making use of the water, the first ten days had no effect; but after remaining there three months was completely restored to health. He was upwards of seventy years old, and on his return home, which was in South-Carolina, he was unknown by his wife, having a fresh countenance; the blood flowed freely through his withered veins, and in two years two fine children were added to his family. A boy of about sixteen, who was much afflicted with the jaundice, insomuch that he had become completely yellow, on using these waters was restored to health, and received his natural colour. It has also proved an enemy to the fever and ague, a malady so prevalent in the southern states. There are several of these springs, in one of which the thermometer stands at 80°. Over this there is a bathing-house constructed for the convenience of each sex. These springs are in lat. 35° 50′ north, 710 miles southwest of Philadelphia, and hid in a cluster of rocks of stupendous size, hanging over the astonished beholder, and their bowels pregnant with restorative fluids.

This country is watered with many beautiful streams, which glide swiftly through the sands—a pleasant sight to a weary traveller. During my stay here, which was about a week, I took a little excursion into the country, and on my return killed a large rattlesnake, measuring six feet in length and nine inches in circumference. On my approaching him he lay in a posture of defence, with his upper-jaw thrown back at a right angle with the lower, his head raised eight or ten inches from the ground, launching forth his pointed tongue, dipped in venom, exhibiting his crooked fangs, and striking dumb terror to his enemies. This being the first snake of the kind I had ever seen, I dared not move for fear of being chased; but drew out one of my pistols and shot him in the back, which disabled him from running. He then unsluiced his rage, choaking himself with poison, biting himself in several places, and in ten minutes died with his tusks in his own body. There were on his tail twenty rattles, which, as I was informed, indicated his age to be twenty years. The bite of this snake is supposed by many to be incurable. It has, however, been repeatedly proved, that immediate applications arrest the progress of the poison of this venomous reptile. A mixture of a decoction of plantain and sweet oil, applied externally, and taken at the same time as a drink, has been found very efficacious.

On the 27th of September, the weather being pleasant, I set out for Newport, a small town on the river French Broad. At sunset I arrived, having much difficulty in finding the town; for it was hid in a deep valley. It is the most licentious place in the state of Tennessee, containing about twenty houses of sloth, indolence, and dis-

country of so much importance, and where they live in peace and plenty, subject only to wholesome laws, continually violating the laws of God and their country, I cannot avoid expressing my disgust, and considering them an injury to their country, and a disgrace to the human family.

---

## CHAP. II.

*The author descends the river French Broad—Description of the river—Prevalence of fogs—Plenty of game—Bears—Lead mines—Leaky boat obliges me to unlade—Excessive rains—Fort Granger—Description of Tennessee river—Description of the Chickasaw tribe of Indians—Enters the Ohio—Beauty and richness of its banks—Singular occurrence at the mouth of Ohio river—Grandeur of the Missisippi—Great quantity of drift-wood—Severe storm—Perilous situation of the author—Causes why the navigation of the Missisippi river is rendered so dangerous—General description of it.*

At Newport I sold my horse, and purchased an ark, or flat-bottomed boat, of about twelve tons burthen, and hired three men to descend the river to New-Orleans. On the 1st of October I began to descend French Broad. This river runs a northwest course about 25 or 30 miles, and joins the Holston; it is very difficult for strangers to pass

mouth. The next morning, at sunrise, we enterd the Holston, a considerable stream, about 200 miles in length; in its course it receives the Watauga and French Broad, and is navigable for crafts of thirty tons burthen 100 miles from its mouth. Its shores abound with much valuable timber of all kinds. There are many indolent people who inhabit these shores, who live solely by hunting and fishing, being very different from those who live in the inhabited parts of the state. The heavy fogs, which frequently arise on these rivers, often detained us for hours, in which time I would frequently take a little tour with my gun. This country abounds with game of all kinds, delightful for a sportsman. In one of these excursions, I shot a bear as he was clumsily getting down a tree: the ball entered the fleshy part of his body, and he fell to the ground. In his fall he was much stunned, and thinking him dead, I went towards him. On my approach he raised himself for an attack. I soon retreated, and getting into the top of a fallen tree, waited his motion. He passed the tree without seeing me, and before I could load and get down, was out of sight. However, I traced him by the blood about a mile, where I found he had crossed a small creek, but was too weak to climb the bank on the opposite side. I here took deliberate aim, and shot him dead. Returning, I sent two of my men after him. When dressed, he weighed four hundred pounds.

There are several lead mines on these rivers; one of them, on the French Broad, is very extensive.

On the 5th October my boat sprang a leak, and I was obliged to take her cargo out and repair her, which em-

seven or eight feet, there having been successive rains for several days. After reloading we again started, and the Holston soon swept us down to its mouth. At this place stands Fort Granger, which is 370 miles south-west of Richmond, in Virginia. The Holston empties into the Tennessee, a beautiful and bold river, which gives name to the state. It rises in the mountains of South-Carolina, in latitude about 34° north, and is upwards of a thousand miles in length, running a north-westerly course to latitude 30° north, then turning in a circular manner to the north, it mingles with the Ohio, fifty miles from its mouth.

Boats of almost any burthen can ascend to the Muscle Shoals, which are near three hundred miles from its mouth. Through these shoals the navigation is difficult. They are three or four miles in breadth, interspersed with small islands, and dividing the stream into many channels. The water is very shallow, and runs with great rapidity. The name is derived from the quantity of shells and fresh-water clams found on the bottom and shores.

This river is well stored with all kinds of fish common in fresh waters. There is a part of the Chickasaw tribe of Indians that inhabit these shores: of them I purchased a piece of venison weighing twenty pounds. They live transiently in wigwams, and many of them wear clothing. They are very docile; but addicted to theft, and are few in number. In going down the Tennessee, we had pleasant weather, except the nightly fogs, which were injurious to my health. Time passed away with me, unusually slow; thinking my experience was not adequate to my present proceedings, and yet not wishing to abandon my

ciful pleasure. During our passage down this river, we passed several small towns, which I shall not here describe.

On the 16th of October we entered the Ohio, a river universally acknowledged to be the most beautiful of any on the continent, or perhaps in the world. It receives many tributary streams, all of which flow through an extensive country of rich soil, and covered with valuable timber of immense size. I shall not here particularly describe the Ohio, reserving such description for a subsequent part of my journal. On entering this river, I found the water to be at a medium height, the current delightfully gentle, and the waters clear, with elevated banks. When we arrived near the mouth, we found the current diminishing, and our boat on the point of stopping, the cause then unknown to me; when all of a sudden, I beheld the Missisippi flowing down with pomp and grandeur.

This river, being much higher than the Ohio, seemed to look upon it with disdain, and receive it with reluctance. On entering the Missisippi, we found ourselves carried down by an impetuous current. Night coming on, and looking likely for a storm, I thought it best to come too, which we did after an hour's hard labour. We made several attempts to gain certain objects, but were carried by them with great rapidity, and our boat being clumsy, it was with much difficulty that we stopped six or seven miles below the mouth of the Ohio. Our situation was disagreeable that night, for as we lay in a bend of the river, the drift-wood would set over towards us. As night had come on, and our boat was unmanageable, we concluded not to look for a better situation, but keep a strict watch with poles, to keep off the drift. Next

time to look a little harbour; it blew a perfect hurricane for six hours, in which time my hauser broke, but being in a small bayau, it did but little injury. It continued to blow hard all night, and a more tremendous storm I never witnessed. Our situation was more dangerous here, than when we lay in the river, on account of the large trees around us. We could hear, at intervals, the dismal crash of trees at a distance; one falling directly across the mouth of the bayau, put us in the greatest fear. The next morning the storm abated, and after cutting a passage through the fallen trees, we cleared out with caution.

The navigation of the Missisippi is rendered somewhat difficult, and often dangerous, in consequence of the numerous islands, sawyers, planters, &c. which stand in every part of the river.

Sawyers are large trees standing with their tops fast rooted in the mud, and their butts projecting, some two, some six, and some twenty feet out of the water, inclining down with the current, which keeps them in constant motion, rising and falling; from which they derive their name. They often prove fatal to boats that happen to strike upon them. Their weight is such that they will raise a craft of forty or fifty tons burthen. Old boatmen say they have known them to stand for twenty years, and some not more than two months, appearing and disappearing at different times and different places; so that the river is always new to an old boatman, and he must keep a constant look-out.

Besides these there are the planters, which stand pointing up stream, some under and some above the surface.

water from the rapidity of the current. Boats are often stove that run against them.

There are also many ilsands, formed by the drift-wood lodging against the planters above-mentioned. These islands are large and very frequent in this river, some of them increasing, and others diminishing. Travellers, in going down the Missisippi, are advised on approaching these islands, to row in time into one or other of the sucks, as boats are often carried on their heads, and a sand-bar always projects some distance above.

The rapidity of this river, and the great depth of its waters, produce numerous boils, or whirlpools, which extend from shore to shore, and frequently arise under boats, turning them quite round. They arise from the bottom, and bring with them a sediment that gives the water a thick muddy appearance, which is at first unpleasant to strangers. It is of a purgative nature, though thought to be extremely wholesome, and is called the best for sea of any in the world.

The Missisippi is styled the Nile of North America. It is said to take its rise in the White-bear lake, in latitude between 48 and 49 degrees north, and, following its windings, it is, according to Morse, upwards of 3000 miles in length, from its source to its discharge into the Gulf of Mexico.

There are many streams that fall into the Missisippi, from the east and from the west. The largest from the west is the Missouri,* 200 miles from the mouth of the Ohio. The Red river enters in about 200 miles above New-Orleans, from the west.

On the east, the principal streams are the Illinois and

## CHAP. III.

*New-Madrid—Alarm of the author for his own safety, with the melancholy fate of one of his men—Plenty of game—Excessive rain—General observations on the country both sides of the Missisippi—Comparison between the healthiness of the climate and that of Ohio—Author kills a large panther—Slow progress in ascending the river—Description of the manner in which it is performed—Usefulness of steam-boats in its navigation—Crazy state of the author's boat—Impositions practiced by boat-builders—Difficulty and danger of descending the river—Beauty of the scenery on the river—Description of the Osark tribe of Indians—Hospitality of a French gentleman—Arrival at Natchez—Washington—Reasons why it is declining in population—Pleasing appearance of the sugar plantations—Singular appearance of the river.*

On the 20th of October we reached New-Madrid, a small town on the west side of the river, sixty miles below the mouth of the Ohio, which contains twenty or thirty houses, much scattered. The inhabitants are chiefly French; the houses small, though neatly furnished. We lay here through the night of the 20th, when a dreadful accident happened. We came too about a quarter of a mile below the town. Two of my men being desirous to go on shore, I consented. They took the canoe and started at dusk. The length of their stay made me uneasy. I knew not their dispositions, and being alone

were going to desert me. About three o'clock in the morning, I heard the cry of Help me, Save me. I hallooed as loud as possible, still was kept up this lamentable cry. I sprang from the boat to the bank, and directed my course the way from whence I judged the sound to come. In leaping a ditch I fell and sprained my wrist. I made all speed possible for a quarter of a mile along the shore, where I heard a voice that said, Come quick or I shall drown too. This greatly alarmed me. I ran up a little farther and found a canoe, and unthinkingly jumped in and shoved off, without a paddle, and was soon in the middle of the stream. However, making a virtue of necessity, I drew off one of my boots for a paddle, and made the best of my way towards the poor sufferer, who I found was one of my men, lying across the canoe in which they came to the shore, which was bottom side up.

On my paddling towards him, he asked me if I had got Sims with me, and on my answering him in the negative, he said the canoe had upset, and Sims, being drunk, had fallen out. I was greatly shocked at this information; but having no time to lose, as I was by this time two miles below my boat, he with some difficulty got in with me, and we made the best of our way to the shore.

On arriving we found several long pieces of bark, with which we made paddles, and in about two hours made to our boat, stopping at intervals, to hear, if possible, Sims hallooing for us, but nothing broke the awful silence, except the screeching of owls. It was one of those nights which, to persons in our situation, is mournful and sickening; the moon would transiently appear from behind dark clouds, which almost veiled the heavens.

faintly imagined that every stump or log was the unfortunate man; but alas! he was gone. Giving up all hopes of finding him, we returned to our boat with heavy hearts. I now began to question Adams, for that was the man's name who had accompanied him on shore. His tale was as follows.

"We started in order to go up to the barge. We passed four miles up, and finding it tedious rowing against the current, when we got opposite the town I thought it best not to go further. He insisted on going, saying that he wished to see them once more, being some of his acquaintance, for he expected to be in h-ll before morning. I consented to go, and we again started and met his friends coming down, having plenty of whiskey. We all went on shore, and having made a small fire, formed a circle, and began to pass round the mug. Sims drank uncommonly free; he drank the devil's health, saying he would see him before he slept. The liquor being nearly out, and it growing late, it was proposed by the company, before they broke up, to try who could tell the greatest lie. Sims' turn came last, who proposed telling the truth. Did you observe me, says he, dosing a little while ago? To which they answered, yes. I dreamed, says he, that our boat had sprung a leak, and was on the point of sinking, and as we were going to the assistance of the Captain, I fell into the Missisippi, and was drowned: I have been uneasy ever since, and, Adams, we will go down and see what is the matter, for I feel much depressed, although I am in liquor. When the company broke up, we started for our canoe, and the rest for the town, which was a mile below. I found

we got, as I judged, within a mile of you, Sims started up suddenly, saying he had dreamed again, and on rising up in the boat, he staggered over, and in his fall catched the side of the boat, and turned it over. I got hold of the boat, and called several times, but received no answer. Sims went down, and on rising caught hold of my great coat, vainly trying to get upon the boat; he several times pulled me under water. At length I extricated myself from him, he immediately went down, and rose no more. I heard you hail me, and you soon came to my relief, or I should have inevitably perished, as I cannot swim."

Daylight soon appeared, and at sunrise we cleared out. In endeavouring to run the outside of a sawyer, I ran with my stern athwart it, and unshipped my steering-oar,* which I lost, but sustained no other material injury. We soon found ourselves at a loss without a guide, and came on shore at a bend about four miles below the place where we set out. On coming near the shore, judge what must have been our surprise on finding the body of Sims lodged against some drift. It was our intention to have made land above him; but the current, which always runs impetuously round the bends of the river, prevented, and we landed 500 yards below. Our first care was to secure the boat in a proper manner: we then took the small boat which I took from the shore at the cry of distress the preceding night, and made for the body of Sims. With some difficulty we got round the point of a small wooden island that projected some distance from the shore. We found the unfortunate man lying on his back—a mournful spectacle. After fixing

a rope round his body, we towed him to the shore. A short inquest was held among ourselves, which was considered necessary: his death was supposed to be accidental. I now set one of my men at work in digging a grave, which he executed with a paddle in the course of an hour, while Adams and myself made a coffin, or box, of some loose plank we had in the boat. At 12 o'clock on the 21st of October, we buried the body of Isaac Sims, about five miles from New-Madrid, on the west shore of the Missisippi. Sims was one of my best hands, being an experienced boatman. He had a family, who lived three or four miles from Portsmouth, on the French Broad river.

Having interred the body, the next thing was to look for a proper stick for a steering-oar. I took Adams with me, and after making our way through a thick cane brake, we entered a beautiful wood of large timber, lifting their heads to an immense height, and seeming to envy each other's glory. The sycamore tree is the monarch of the forest; its size is incredible to all but those who have seen it. In this place I measured one which was thirty-five feet in circumference, making it about eleven feet six inches in diameter. We looked some time before we could discover a stick to suit us, and at length found an elm. After preparing it in a proper manner, I proposed to go a little further into these wilds. We proceeded about half a mile, and came to the brink of a small lake or pond, which we found full of ducks, geese, and cranes. With my rifle, in about half an hour, I killed a fine goose and four ducks. We then returned to our boat, with our steering-oar and game: on our arrival,

weighed about forty pounds. We were now plentifully provided with fresh provisions, of which we stood in need. After shipping our oar, we again shoved off. As the river was falling, we thought it best to improve our time; and having lost our best man, it was judged requisite to use every precaution during the remainder of our voyage. The sun not being more than an hour high, only gave us time to float far enough down to get a good harbour, which was in an eddy, below a projecting point.

The sudden absence of the sun alarmed me; I turned round, and just had a glimpse of its fiery edge, sinking below an awfully formed cloud, which arose with such astonishing swiftness that in ten minutes the whole hemisphere was in its blackest robe.

We secured our boat in such a manner that she could not drive on shore, and fixed both her bow and stern fast. We were no sooner safely moored than the tempest came on, sweeping every thing in its way. Its current was generally about a quarter of a mile wide, running an easterly course, and bearing down all opposition. Providentially, we lay on the opposite side from whence it came, or we should have suffered materially; for the next morning we could discover the opposite shore to be full of trees of enormous size, laying prostrate in the river, and opening a prospect for miles on both sides, exhibiting to view the resistless power and might of the Author of nature. The rain was heavy but not steady, stopping suddenly, and beginning with thick, heavy drops, roaring in the air, and seeming to be forced by the winds to an untimely birth. This tornado did not last

on the Missisippi, especially in the summer season, and often cause a considerable swell.

Next morning I pursued my journey, but not without being well convinced of the great danger we had escaped, and what was in all probability but the beginning of perils. We now had fine weather, and enjoyed the beauty of a fine landscape, and the music of birds, as we passed swiftly along.

No river in the world is perhaps richer in its prospects than the celebrated Missisippi. It is bounded on all sides with good land, and stately timber. Nature seems to have spared no pains in laying the foundation of our country; pointing the various streams to their respective discharge; making them adequate in size to bear down the productions of their shores for exportation, and stretching their courses through variegated climes of the fattest soil.

The shores of the Missisippi are supposed to be more healthy than those of the Ohio, as the fogs are neither so frequent nor heavy. Immediately on the Missisippi the ground is low, and in many places is overflowed in the months of May and June; but proceeding a little back, the land becomes elevated, excepting when you get near New-Orleans; there, as you proceed back, it becomes swampy. The upper and middle parts of the river abound with a variety of trees, among which are the sycamore, white and black ash, buck-eye, maple, myrtle, hickory, white and black oak, elm, gum, black walnut, chesnut, and dogwood, which grow to an immense size,

ship and wharf building, &c. The cypress grows very large, and on a foundation uncommon for other trees. For about three or four feet above the ground the body spreads amazingly, forming what are termed knees, which brace out on all sides, forming half sunk columns, and then drawing in suddenly, the tree forms a regular sized tower. Some of them are one hundred feet without a limb.

Nothing worthy of note occurred during this day. At night we came too on a small island, a little before sunset. I was much pleased with our delightful situation, and what made me more so, was the barking of our little dog the instant he entered the woods. I took my gun and ascended the bank, and the first thing that met my eyes was a panther, which lay in the crotch of a large tree, sixty or seventy feet from the ground. I stepped back a few yards behind a bunch of cane, where I fired and wounded him in the neck: at that instant he leaped to the ground, and on recovering himself made off to a little swamp, where he cried lamentably. We now all assembled, and routed him out, when I got a shot and killed him. This ferocious animal measured eight feet ten inches from his nose to the end of his tail. After killing some small game, we returned to the boat.

October 22d. Started early in the morning. At ten o'clock we met a barge ascending the river, of about 120 tons burthen. Their progress was slow and tedious. The winds being very unsteady, and the river very crooked, sails are but seldom set.

It may be interesting to many readers to have an idea

flict; and continual exertions are necessary to make the smallest progress; these labours and exposures are enough to impair the soundest constitution, and far exceed the perils of the sea.

It generally takes three, and sometimes four months, to ascend the river from New-Orleans to the falls of the Ohio. The boats for this purpose are generally long, from fifty to an hundred feet, with their bows made sharp, in order to cut the stream that bears so forcibly against them. They have one small bow and stern deck; between these is a deck raised about six feet, having on either side, from stem to stern, running boards, for the purpose of using poles. They have generally but one mast carrying a square sail; though there are a few barges which are schooner rigged.

A vessel starting from New-Orleans of an hundred tons burthen, generally employs twenty or twenty-five hands, taking with them provisions enough to last them to the settlements on the Ohio. The hands employed are generally hired by the trip, and are all well provided with poles and oars. They employ commonly one or two men as sailors, for the purpose of being ready in a favourable wind, as the Kentuckians are very awkward in the management of sails. Being thus prepared, they shove on with surprising alacrity. Their manner of rowing is very singular; drawing their oars as far through the water as their situation, or the length of their arms will permit, and throwing them back with such agility that they are scarcely perceptible; just admitting them to skim the surface, then sinking them deep in the water, and raising themselves, bend the stubborn ash, while the

they derive no little credit. Thus using every exertion, they make considerable headway, averaging ten or twelve miles a day.

For upwards of an hundred miles above New-Orleans, the river is banked up, to prevent the inundation of the land under cultivation. This is a great object to the bargemen in using their cordale, which they extend from the mast-head to the shore, and the men shoulder it and tow up their craft with cheerfulness. After getting above their cordaling ground, in swift water they make use of their warp; at other times they use their setting-poles where the sounding will admit, running across on every point.

With a strong head wind, it is impossible to move up this current. There have been instances of sailing forty or fifty miles with one wind, notwithstanding the great bends in the river. The wind generally blows up or down the river, when there is any stirring.

But by Fulton's invention of forcing by the power of steam, vessels of any burthen can ascend. There are now several steam-boats on the Missisippi and Ohio, which greatly add to the interesting commerce of the western and southern states. There is one which runs from New-Orleans to the mouth of the river, for the purpose of towing up vessels. This meets with great encouragement; and shortens the passage of vessels, which would otherwise be very tedious. It often requires as much time for vessels from the northern states to reach

These lasted for several days, an intermission of the rain only, favoured us. The winds prevented us from proceeding on our passage; though several attempts were made, we were immediately blown on shore again.

I here found my boat was very crazy and weak, leaking in many places. I would caution the inexperienced who may venture down so long and wild a river as the Missisippi, to be aware of whom they purchase boats, to look well through every part, and to spare no pains in having the opinion of judges. One will scarcely imagine how much depends on this. The frequent impositions and neglect of boat-builders, often endanger the property, and even the lives of those on board.

A credible gentleman informed me of several instances of this kind, particularly one where he was himself a sufferer. He purchased a boat at Nashville, Ten. of about seventy tons, and after having it insured, loaded her with flour and horses for New-Orleans. The second day after his entering the Missisippi, he was wrecked in the following manner: While they were proceeding cheerfully on their voyage, not suspecting but they would reach their destined port in safety, from the fineness of the weather, and the strong sawyer-proof craft under them; but not observing a small breaker ahead of them, ran on it, and found themselves thrown round and stopped instantly, and had just time to get the small boat along side, and save the lives of those on board, with a few valuable articles, before she filled. Having got her loose, they endeavoured to get her as near shore as possible before she went down; forcing out the horses, and clearing away the flour, they discovered the leak, which they in

the water might fall so that they could repair her. On examination they found that one third of her bottom was of rotten wood, and not fit for use. They returned to Nashville, where he immediately commenced a suit against the builder. After the defendant's swearing that the craft was sound, the above-mentioned gentleman produced a piece of the rotten plank, broke by the sawyer on which they struck, which could be crumbled to pieces by the hand: by this he was compensated, after the examination of the insurance company.

At present all boats are inspected previous to their being launched.

Nov. 2. The winds abated, and we proceeded this morning. We were in good water, but in the afterpart of the day we found the river to be uncomonly crooked. After constant exertions, we made but twelve miles that day. We were carried by the current, in every bend, with a force that would leave us in the eddy, or counter-current. These eddies we found more common as we descended the river; in one of them we were labouring for near three hours, before we were relieved; we found it impracticable to clear it by rowing, for it ran up with as much force as the current did down before our entering it, which was at the lower end. On endeavouring to gain the descending current, I would row as much headway as possible; but on the bow's striking the counteracting current, the boat was instantly whirled round. Finding this all in vain, I got out my warp, which I extended from the boat to a neighbouring sawyer; by this

both sides having equal power, neither would give us the least advantage. After getting a little acquainted with their nature, I would uniformly row as near to every point as possible, and although the current was not as strong, yet it prevents being drawn into the bend. This practice is generally kept up by the most experienced watermen, excepting those who are too negligent to exert themselves, and who thence conclude the Missisippi to be a laborious and unprofitable voyage.

These counter-currents are of great importance to bargemen in ascending the river. Some of them are three miles in length; but on arriving at their head the descending current runs with amazing force. In going round some of these points, the greatest care is required in steering, to keep the boat's bows to the current. I have often seen boats whirl round by the keel's getting the smallest hold of the current, in spite of all the oars. At other times, when a skilful helmsman has the charge, after gaining as much headway as possible in the eddy, striking the opposing stream, their headway begins to deaden: they double their strokes; but all in vain; an equilibrium ensues for a moment; till at length, the heavy and steady pressure of nature prevails, and the boat falls back; the spirits of the rowers flag, and they are carried impetuously down till they make the shore again.

Nov. 3. I this day passed a beautiful tract of wilderness, affording a plentiful subsistence to the animal creation, and inviting, by enchanting prospects and luxuri-

sent the attractions of the settled parts were more enticing, your hills and vallies, believe me, will one day be the resort of men of genius and enterprise, who will add to your future glory.

On the 4th we killed some venison and other game. On the 10th we were visited by a few of the Osark tribe of Indians, who came to us in canoes, bringing with them a few turkies, percimmons, and deer-skins. I purchased some of those articles, and gave them in exchange, powder and lead, and some corn-meal. They say that their tribe is small, and that they remain neutral between the United States and other powers. They are of large stature, and their limbs well proportioned. They appear to be slovenly and filthy, and for Indians they are of an uncommonly dark complexion. They are called by the name of a river they inhabit, on the west side of the Missisippi.

On the 20th, 21st, and 22d, we passed several Indian camps, and would often be favoured with a visit. There are a part of the Chickasaw and Choctaw tribes who frequent this river for the purpose of fishing, plundering, &c. Those Indians belonging to, or living within the United States, I shall hereafter give a particular description of.

On the 28th we arrived at the Walnut hills, a beautiful and delightful tract of country. These hills are inhabited, and under good cultivation, affording a delightful prospect from the river. Whilst I was gazing at the beauty of the scene, and viewing Phœbus just stretching

made my boat fast, in order to view the beauties of nature on shore.

After walking about half a mile, over a green-tufted soil of beautiful vales and hills, I arrived at a large and commodious house, where I got a fresh repast, and information of the country. The house belonged to a French gentleman, lately removed from France; he was a man of taste, who had been through the western and southern states, and had found no place so congenial to his mind as that which he now occupied. I believe he has much intriguing confederacy with the anglos. Cotton here produces well; also corn, tobacco, hemp, fruits, &c. &c. After spending a few hours I returned to my boat; with some difficulty we cleared the eddy, and hauled out into the current.

On the 2d of December we arrived at Natches, a very conspicuous town on the east bank, containing at present between three and four hundred houses, well built, and many of them of brick. It stands on an eminence of about 200 feet from the level of the river. A small part of the town is under the hill, immediately on the river; it is well known to be the resort of dissipation. Here is the bold-faced strumpet, full of blasphemies, who looks upon the virtuous part of her sex with contempt and hatred; every house is a grocery, containing gambling, music and dancing, fornicators, &c. This is the stopping place for all boatmen from Kentucky, Tennessee, &c.; yes, I have in that place seen 150 boats, loaded with produce, bound to New-Orleans, delaying their

chanics of every description. The town is generally made up of emigrants from the eastern states. The ascent from the river is made easy by means of a dug-way, half a mile in length, up which is carried all the water made use of in the town for washing; many use it for drinking, in preference to the well-water, which is extremely hard and unpleasant, especially to strangers.

Although this place is surrounded by an excellent and well-cultivated country, yet it wholly depends on produce from up the river, which can be had much cheaper, and for this reason the farmers do not raise corn, wheat, &c. The common product is cotton and tobacco; the latter is just beginning to be cultivated.

There is a market in this place, which is celebrated for fish, particularly the cat-fish, which they take out of the Missisippi in abundance, and of incredible size, weighing from 10 to 200 pounds. Their beef is poor, as also flesh of other kinds.

Six miles back from this is Washington, a small town with a court-house and goal, and is the seat of government for the Missisippi territory, it will probably be removed to Natches. Washington is in a state of decline, owing to its distance from the river. St. Stephens will probably be the seat of government in a short time, which place and country I shall treat upon hereafter.

Dec. 5. I again started in the afternoon. This night I floated down with the current. The river from Natches to New-Orleans, is delightfully smooth, and unbroken by sawyers; but finding by this I should lose sight of a beautiful country, and wishing to satisfy my mind with every particular, I determined to lie by the en-

only by the solemn cry of owls, and the piercing howl of beasts of prey.

Dec. 6. The country begins to get low, and swampy, abounding with cypress trees, which hang full of moss, called Spanish moss. This moss, or tree-grass, is common in the southern states, particularly on the Missisippi; it hangs on the body, and every projecting limb, four or five feet, loosely entwined, and cloaks the wilderness with still greater gloom, hanging in weeping forms of mournful gray. On this moss the Spanish horses subsist the year round. The inhabitants use it for matrasses, &c.; there is also much of it exported for the purpose of stuffing saddles, chairs, &c. after it is cured in a proper manner. It is found only on low ground, and near water-courses. It has a taste not unpleasant, and is full of juice. Large quantities of it are taken to the northern states.

Dec. 8. We arrived at Baaton Rouge, a small town on the east side of the river, containing about one hundred houses. The inhabitants are principally French. There are here a considerable number of stores, chiefly groceries. The town stands on an elevated spot, or sandy bluff. The productions of the country around are cotton, indigo, &c. We shoved off after staying here one hour. We now began to come to the plantations. How beautiful these appeared, after pursuing our way through a rugged wilderness, I can describe to none but those who have experienced it. With their help I can stammer over the outlines of the pleasure it created within me. Shrinking from the blast of winter, I was gradually arriving in a warm latitude, and passing plantations of excessive

Rockasec and Tunikee; the latter is supposed to be fifty miles around and but five across. With a capital of fifty or sixty thousand dollars, there might be many tedious miles saved in the navigation of this river. By cutting small courses across these necks, there would be no difficulty in uniting or straightening this mighty stream in many places; some of which are not more than half a mile, and are made up of loose earth. In many places it would save ten, in others twenty, and in one or two instances fifty miles. All these added, would be in course of time an object, particularly in ascending the river. It has been contemplated by some characters of enterprise, but fell through for want of funds. But as the country grows older, and its advantages are discovered, improvements will assist the workmanship of nature in instances of the above-mentioned kind. This country has far exceeded the most mature nations of Europe, in improvements and inventions which have surpassed in their practical results all the theories of the old world.

The rich sugar and cotton plantations now began to wear a most elegant aspect, with commodious buildings, and out-houses for the numerous servants, who appeared in droves, going to and fro upon the plantations. The manner in which these poor Africans are treated by their overseers, is frequently cruel in the extreme; but I shall here forbear making any remarks on this subject. This southwestern extremity of the United States has been nursed by European powers, and seems not to have been brought to perfection, nor a state of subordination and rectitude, until it fell into the hands of the mild and judi-

zen, having for several years shared good and evil, luxury and want.

The weather was now warm and pleasant, and it being the coldest month in the year, the sun's beams were very grateful.

The Missisippi, differing from other rivers, seems to be elevated above the general level of the land, which is truly the case, especially as you proceed near its mouth; the land on each side sinks, commencing at its margin and ending in a swamp or lake. While other rivers are depressed or compressed within the limits of huge clusters of mountains, and exhibit shores lined with rocks, this is adorned with the smile of luxury.

Nature seems to have been aware of the free race of people that should inhabit this continent of Columbus, (not of Americus,) and although there were suited to evry class or race of people, zones, torrid, temperate, and frigid; yet she thought her temperate zone not adequate to contain the happy beings that might arise either from an impulse of emigration, or from the natural source of increase: she therefore set her convulsive powers in operation, and assuaged the surging billows from the face of what is now the fattest soil on the terraqueous globe. Exposing it in time to the action of the beams of the sun, it became the finest and most productive region of the world; while the rivers only remain as traces of that ocean which once inundated this portion of the globe.

The plantations on this coast do not many of them extend more than a mile and a half from the coast, till they are [illegible]

## CHAP. IV.

*Arrival at New-Orleans—Difficulty of landing—Description of New-Orleans—Badness of the water—Romantic appearance of the Church—Rapid improvement of New-Orleans—Causes why it is sickly—Excellence of the market—Intentions of the author to ship for Jamaica.*

On the 13th Dec. 1808, I arrived at New-Orleans, after encountering many difficulties, on a strange river, and frequent insults from my men. In landing here I found more difficulty than in any part of my journey, as the city lies on a bend of the river which forms an eddy. I here made several attempts to land, but on striking the eddy it would take me near a mile up the river, before I could again make the current. I at length, by a fortunate turn of the eddy, drove in with exulting pleasure, and leaped on shore: I secured my boat, and for a moment was fixed to the spot, meditating on the fatigues I had encountered. I here sold my little cargo to unexpected advantage, and after discharging my men, felt as it were, released from a world of care and anxiety. I took lodgings with a Dr. De Fludcar, a French gentleman of great merit, as I afterwards found him to be.

I shall here give a short description of New-Orleans, as in its present state. It lies in lat. 29° 49′ north, and 90° 5′ west lon. on the east side of the Missisippi, and 100

kind of cellar on the surface of the ground; all places below the surface would be filled with water constantly. For the purpose of receiving fresh air, the houses are built as high as the tornadoes common to that country will permit. They are generally built on a French construction, affording elevated terraces and walks, which open to the gentle breeze in the heat of summer.

The level of this city is several feet below the surface of the river in its periodical floods, and is saved from inundation only by a bank levey on its margin; hence all the water collected in the city runs off from the river, and oozes at length in a swamp and lake, in the rear of the town. The waters and slops, after being used, are thrown into the gutters, or leaders, which are made of hewn timber, one for the bottom, and one on each side; here it slowly moves off, creating a very nauseous smell during the dry seasons, and is relieved only by the rains, which cleanse them from the odious filth they had collected.

All the water made use of in the city, is carried from the river in casks, there not being a well in the place, of which any use is made. A person would naturally suppose aqueducts would be stretched through the streets; but this requires yankeeism, which disbands all claims of European despotism.

The water of this celebrated river is the best of itself of any in the United States, being cool through the sultry months of summer, and can, without being attended with the least harm, be drank in the freest perspiration. But filth and negligence will cause the purest waters to

and there constantly kept in circulation, must consequently imbibe a quantity of putrefaction.

Out of the above-mentioned eddy, all the water made use of is taken; but when they find that the scourging hand of disease is beginning its career, and dismal maladies are making rapid progress from house to house, like New-York, they will cleanse their city, and sweep off the brooding pestilence, drinking pure water in preference to foul.

This city contains an elegant church for the Roman Catholics, and a monastery for the exercise of the nuns. There are no other public buildings for worship. In front of the church is an elegant square, of level, green turf, from which the church has a very romantic appearance. There are many other public buildings, as well as private, which exhibit a pattern of the beauty and elegance of French taste, and which the architect views with astonishment.

New-Orleans, of late years, has been thriving astonishingly. Emigrants from all parts of the United States, are constantly roving the western and southern country, and naturally descend to New-Orleans; and although those from the northern states are not subject to the climate, yet under the impression of profiting, they many of them continue till they get attacked, and never return. Others, of loose habits, and inclined to dissipation, meet with great encouragement till they are deprived of the means of subsistence, and then are left to the mercy of the scorching sun; this, with the use of ardent liquors to

there made use of, the system is under no greater affliction than it would be elsewhere, as New-Orleans can produce instances of longevity surpassing most other parts of the United States.

The nightly air in this vicinity is very injurious, and often proves fatal, in the hottest seasons of the year, although it would be reasonable to suppose the sun would so warm the atmosphere and the animal creation, that his absence would have no effect in so short a time: but when his last rays disappear, nature seems to change her element; a cold damp arises, and a thick vapour every where prevails. This is succeeded by chilling dews, which lay in heavy drops, as if acting in opposition to the sun's influence. But these vapours are soon scattered when the earth is again exposed to the sultry beams of that refulgent sun, whose power and attraction keep in subjection all those orbs within his care, visiting them in time with his enlivening presence.

Upon the whole, I conclude that the wealth of New-Orleans will, in no distant time, equal that of any other American city, and that Louisiana will ultimately be the garden spot of the western continent.

The exports of Louisiana are sugar, cotton, rice, tobacco, indigo, oranges, &c. The sugar is universally allowed to be the best of the kind manufactured in the known world.

During my stay in New-Orleans I had frequent opportunities for learning the situation of the country west of the Missisippi; and I here found that my early attainment of

of a different cast yet to go through, perhaps to harden and temper me for new perils.

The market of New-Orleans is equal to any of its size in the United States. In this market can be had the products of all climes, and as cheap as at New-York. The beef is not so good as in the northern and middle states; fish, both fresh and dried, and vegetables of every kind, are plenty; also nuts, mellons, and fruits. The watermellon can be had at any time of the year. This city is wholly dependent on the upper states, namely, Ohio, Kentucky, and Tennessee, for their produce, which is corn-meal, flour, beef, pork, butter, potatoes, apples, cider, whiskey, &c. &c. They receive in return some few foreign articles, but most generally and naturally prefer cash, abstaining from imported luxuries, being contented with their own homely fare, excepting coffee, of which they are remarkably fond. In their dress they prefer the rugged leggins and hunting-shirt, of a ground colour, trimmed with yellow. With this suit and their rifle, they feel always perfectly at home.

I remained in New-Orleans until the month of April, which was totally averse to my former plan. Commercial interest enticed me to ship for Jamaica. Dr. De Fludcar, the gentleman with whom I boarded, entered with me upon a little adventure, which it was thought would prove advantageous to us both.

## CHAP. V.

*Arrival at Jamaica—Departure of Dr. De Fludcar—Determination of the author to visit Port au Prince—Departure from Jamaica—Arrival at Port au Prince—Project of a tour in the interior of the island—Author sets out, accompanied by a gentleman—Beauty and grandeur of the scenery—Difficulty and danger of travelling—Singular cave discovered—Description of it—Return of the author—Violent illness—Recovery—Takes passage for Savannah—Shipwreck, and imminent danger of the author's life—Description of Cumberland harbour—Melancholy death of Captain Crasewell—Return to Kingston—General description of Jamaica—Productions of the island—Description of Port Royal trade—The author again returns to the United States—Arrival at New-Orleans—Preparations for ascending the Red river.*

On the 10th of May, 1809, we set sail on board the Dolphin. On the 20th we arrived at Kingston, the capital of the island of Jamaica. We soon despatched our sales, and De Fludcar returned to New-Orleans. Interest further led me to indulge every flattering hope. I took a tour into the interior of the island, which I found to consist of huge clusters of rocks, the veins of which are filled

is in latitude 17° north, and about the longitude of the city of Washington.

On the 4th of June I took a passage on board the Neptune schooner for Port au Prince, at which place I arrived on the 11th. It lies in latitude 18° north, and about the meridian of Philadelphia. The island of St. Domingo lies between Cuba and Porto Rico. The face of the country in most parts is beautifully adorned with hills and vallies, and covered with handsome groves of large timber, and a variety of rivers running in every direction, which add beauty and elegance to the variegated landscape.

During my stay in this port I frequently heard from my parents in London, which relieved my anxiety; and by sending letters I informed them of my circumstances. I met one day, by accident, with an acquaintance, and proposed to him to take a view of the interior, and if his mind corresponded with that of a naturalist, we would not fail of exploring any internal cavity, or subterraneous passage that we might discover. He readily yielded to my proposal, but informed me of his acquaintance on the island, and that it was necessary to visit them before our departure. He sat out for that purpose, and I waited his return with patience. On the 19th he returned, and on the 20th we started, and with no other view than that of prying into natural curiosities, of which I was informed the island abounded. On the 25th we arrived at a ridge of rocks, and broken hilly ground, where we had many extensive prospects of a wild forest, which held us in the lowest contempt, regardless of our ramble over her clus-

beauty. These little streams were received by larger, which after winding their courses and augmenting their size, are mingled in the salt waves of the Atlantic.

We had now reached one of these rivers, and finding it not fordable, and not wishing to damage our provisions, we altered our course from southeast to northeast, following its margin for a considerable distance. We crossed many lofty precipices, on one of which we discovered distinct signs of silver, very near the surface of the earth. We took an observation of the place, and proceeded.

On the night of the 27th we encamped on the side of a precipice, down which ran a murmuring stream. Concealing ourselves between two shelves of the rock, we felt secure from wild beasts, and only dreaded the clandestine visits of innumerable reptiles. After placing ourselves in such a manner that we could not fall out of our den, we were soon lulled to sleep by the neighbouring cascade, which drowned all other solitary murmurs, and the lamentations of this re-echoing forest, whose chorus consisted of the night bird's song, the gentle breeze, and sudden blast, winding through the battlements of the clustered mass. In the morning we awoke much refreshed, and continued our tour to the summit, where we had a most beautiful prospect of the country. On our left we had the small but pure waters of the river, veiled by a scattering fog; on our right, at a distance, one above another, we had elevated ridges, and each in turn was watered by falling streams, whose reflection of the sun's

By turning round we beheld our situation truly peculiar, for before we could further proceed, we were forced to ascend a narrow peak, and descend on the other side, for on either side our passage was obstructed by perpendicular cliffs, but from the peak the descent was more gradual. The scene invited our stay till the sun began to direct his rays on our heads, which hurried us down a rough passage of loose stones, where we were often stopped by the hissing of adders; but being in high boots we were not daunted. Of these we killed several; and about 3 o'clock, we found the monster among snakes, having two distinct heads; it was about twenty inches in length. Its heads were perfectly alike, having in the neck of each a joint by which it could move its heads either way, uniting them together, and then throwing them in a right angle, from thence each way to its sides, holding the one and moving the other at pleasure. At the sight of this monster we were much perplexed, as we could not solve in our minds, nor bring any thing of a species born natural, to be in any shape compared with it. On irritating it, both tongues were launched, its body swelled, both heads flattened, and four eyes sparkled with rage; each tongue in vibrating would drop venom; its body, formed in an awkward coil, would change its colour to a reddish brown, with innumerable spots of a bright yellow, full of feverish venom. Its motion was slow and reluctant, stopping at our approach, and moving off at our remaining still. On putting a stick near its heads, both upper jaws would be thrown up,

pense our labour; this we did without much bruising him. We then took off his skin as carefully as possible, which on my return to the port I boxed up, and sent a present to the museum in London. It excited wonder in all who saw it.

The water we carried with us had now given out; accordingly we bent our course towards the river, and after cutting ourselves by falling and stumbling over broken cliffs, we came in sight of it about sunset. The bank was very steep, and it was with difficulty that we procured any water. After satisfying our thirst, we took a little of our provision, which were getting very stale as well as scarce.

The beauties of the evening were ushered in with the piercing cry of birds of prey, and the plunging crash of amphibious reptiles, which only allowed us a short time for conversation in the intervals of their noise. We were not pleased with our situation in this, it being near the margin of a river, and on looking round we could not discover a proper situation without going a few hundred yards down the shore, where we saw some projecting rocks covered with white moss. We found the spot truly romantic. By a gradual ascent on the west side, we were enabled to get near the summit, where we found each step sounded with a dreadful din. This awakened our curiosity, for by every appearance we judged it to be subterraneous, and faintly hoped our conjectures might not be erroneous. At this instant the moon broke forth in reflecting light through the thick

green horizon of the innumerable mahoganys, which abound on this island.

In viewing the wild scene around us we were filled with silent terror. In a kind of revery my companion carelessly shoved off a loose fragment of rock, which tumbled down and terminated in or near some concave part of the rock below, while the reverberation between rolled in every direction. It was now determined to explore any part that might be accessible; the moonlight assisted our external search, and after half an hour's labour in seeking for an entrance, we were about to give over any further pursuit. I sat down in a small fissure, leaving my companion still impressed with an idea that the entrance was in some part practicable. While I was thus sitting in a reclined posture, reposing myself from the fatigue I had endured the day past, I was disturbed by loud, hollow, and indistinct accents, accompanied with the indirect echo of Ker, Ker: I instantly stepped from my seat to a little elevation, and calling my companion by name, (Watson,) was answered in re-echoing shouts of joy. I hastened to the spot, where I found Watson standing in the gloomy front of a spacious grotto, situated in the east northeasterly corner of this cluster, and within a few yards of the river. Every step, every touch, and every word, bore testimony, by their dying sound, embosomed in the winding cavities, that we were on the borders of a subterraneous adventure. Watson informed me that he had been a few yards into its mouth, that it was a little descending, and the circulation of air was heard in every direction. I proposed to him to defer the attempt of entering till morning: he insisted on im-

er, made two torches; then procuring fire, we lit one of them, and having our small arms and all things in readiness, we entered. Watson took the lead. The chill air oozing from the damp cells, created within me a silent horror. Having proceeded about fifteen yards, we came to a rugged descent, and after a few steps over a ridge of loose earth and stones, we found ourselves buried in a spacious cavern of about ten feet in height, and nothing but thick darkness on all sides. Our torches burnt with lustre, and reflected with transparent beauty on the falling drops, which proceeded from every part, forming innumerable little rivulets, which murmured in their courses, and hastening to be absorbed in oblivion, or sink to lower beds, there to remain in various forms of petrifaction. We proceeded in this way for some time without meeting with any obstruction, when at length our progress was stopped by a perpendicular wall. The petrifaction here shone in many lively colours, and at a distance appeared to possess animal life. Here natural forms of a body and shape resembling human were to be seen; the imitation of animals and fowls, and one in particular of a serpent in a spiral coil, with its head raised, on which thick drops would slowly fall, and there consolidate and increase in size. The texture of these are seemingly as hard as that of a rock. Those which from long standing, and the course of the fountains being changed, remain, waiting the slow and sure hand of time to temper and fit them for duration. Some we found to be of an elastic substance, with the cause of which I was at that time unacquainted.

After partly satisfying our curiosity, we proceeded

ceived a low, narrow, arched passage. We now stopped to consult each other with respect to the termination of this remarkable cave. I still proposed to return to the mouth, if possible, as we were much fatigued with the excursion of the day; to which he with reluctance consented. His torch being nearly consumed, I lit mine, which cheered the too visible gloom that surrounded us.

The length of time we had been in the cavern, and the continual droppings of water, together with the damp air, rendered us very uncomfortable, and we forcibly felt our need of repose. We turned about and pursued the same course we came, and on arriving at the mouth congratulated each other on our safe return. The moon shone with unusual brilliancy, and the air seemed to be filled with perfume. Such was the contrast of our momentary situations. We erected a small fire and dried our dampened clothes, took a little brandy we had yet retained; then looked a convenient place, secure as possible, and lay down with the promise of further exploring the grotto when daylight appeared. Fatigue and satisfaction soon lulled us to sleep, insensible of surrounding dangers.

We arose in the morning refreshed; the sun was not yet risen. The numerous alligators bellowed out their thanks for the return of day, and were slowly floating and swimming in every direction, in quest of food. Geese, cranes, and pelicans were flying in abundance. We made a fine breakfast on a large crane we happened to kill as he was flying close over our heads. The sun had risen, and we again made preparations to explore further

again, resolved to explore it to its end. We proceeded faster than before; came to the large ridge of loose stone, and presently came up with the before-mentioned wall. We continued along to the little arched door, the passage was just large enough to admit a man on his hands and knees. I being the smallest, entered first, and in going eight or ten feet found it began to widen, but grew no higher; I creeped along, and found a sudden descent of about three feet, down which I got and found myself standing on sand. Watson, in crawling after me, by some means extinguished his torch, which, by his holding it in the passage, had enabled me before to see my way: but now the blackest gloom surrounded us—gloom too terrific for expression. Luckily, I had brought the fireworks with me, and lighting a match, we lit both our torches, Watson having got with me on this sand bottom. We proceeded, walking upright. The dropping of water had ceased, and the sand under our feet appeared dry. At this instant my eyes met a spark of lustre just before me. I applied my torch to it, and to our joy found symptoms of gold with the sand. We soon found our conjectures were true; for going a few steps further we came to a small running stream, clear as crystal, in the bottom of which we saw thin specks of virgin gold. We now looked in every fissure of the surrounding rocks, if possible to descry some vein; but there was none to be found. We followed this stream to its discharge, under the projecting point of a rock: still strong marks of gold were visible. We gathered a small quantity in the bottom of this stream, and were about to return, when we proposed to take a little brandy and continue our search.

side, and at length came to an ascent of ten or twelve feet, up which we crawled; then having to stoop on our hands and knees, we still ascended through a craggy broken passage of rocks, some loosely hanging and turning as we moved over them. In this way we continued some time, Watson being before, when I called to him to return before our lights were entirely consumed, and we should be left to perish in this dark abode. He seemed to pay no attention to what I said, and still pushed on, observing that the air was not so damp as he proceeded. In a short time Watson informed me he saw light from heaven, and we soon found ourselves in a situation in which we could see the beauties of the morning sky: but the ascent had now become perpendicular, forming a kind of chimney of a triangular form, about nine feet high, and so wide as not to admit of bracing out. Watson placed himself against the side of the rock, and by getting on his head I was enabled to leap out. I then procured a long stick sufficiently strong to bear his weight, by the help of which he got safely out. I had unperceived cut myself in several places about my knees and legs, by the rugged passage through which we came. With heartfelt satisfaction we sat down by the mouth of the cave we had ascended, and recounted each particular of our past fears and joys, and drew up satisfactory conclusions with regard to the existence of gold in the bowels of this spacious cavern; gold which, when tried, we found to be of the purest kind. We here made a minute of every particular respecting what we had seen.

large nor noticed; on all other sides it is bounded by a wild forest, and projecting peaks of stony cliffs.

29th. We started on our return to the port, calculating our course, and determining to take a near direction. Worn out with fatigue, and the heat of the weather, we made slow progress. The course we took shortened our way considerably, yet we had to cross high mountains, and branches of rivers which constantly intercepted our passage, and the many curiosities would detain us, as well as the heavy rains, which seemed to be let down in one entire sheet, sweetly cooling the air and scattering the sultry vapours, and rendering it pleasant and wholesome.

On the 3d of July we arrived at the town, where I was taken sick with the intermittent fever, brought on by constant exposure to the scorching sun. By good care and attendance I soon recovered my health and strength. During the time of my sickness, Watson had shipped to some place, as I supposed, with the news of his adventure; and I have since learned that he returned with a company and further explored this grotto, where they found gold in abundance.

On my passage from St. Jago, in the island of Hispaniola, to the Havanna, I experienced one of those terrible hurricanes which are so frequent in these latitudes. It was after a serene, fine day, in which the beams of an almost vertical sun had just been ameliorated by a gentle sea-breeze, that the sky became suddenly overcast; distant thunder, and the flashes of lightning which gleamed in the west, announced an approaching storm. Our Captain, a man who had a considerable share of nautical

ceived a low, narrow, arched passage. We now stopped to consult each other with respect to the termination of this remarkable cave. I still proposed to return to the mouth, if possible, as we were much fatigued with the excursion of the day; to which he with reluctance consented. His torch being nearly consumed, I lit mine, which cheered the too visible gloom that surrounded us.

The length of time we had been in the cavern, and the continual droppings of water, together with the damp air, rendered us very uncomfortable, and we forcibly felt our need of repose. We turned about and pursued the same course we came, and on arriving at the mouth congratulated each other on our safe return. The moon shone with unusual brilliancy, and the air seemed to be filled with perfume. Such was the contrast of our momentary situations. We erected a small fire and dried our dampened clothes, took a little brandy we had yet retained; then looked a convenient place, secure as possible, and lay down with the promise of further exploring the grotto when daylight appeared. Fatigue and satisfaction soon lulled us to sleep, insensible of surrounding dangers.

We arose in the morning refreshed; the sun was not yet risen. The numerous alligators bellowed out their thanks for the return of day, and were slowly floating and swimming in every direction, in quest of food. Geese, cranes, and pelicans were flying in abundance. We made a fine breakfast on a large crane we happened to kill as he was flying close over our heads. The sun had risen, and we again made preparations to explore further

again, resolved to explore it to its end. We proceeded faster than before; came to the large ridge of loose stone, and presently came up with the before-mentioned wall. We continued along to the little arched door, the passage was just large enough to admit a man on his hands and knees. I being the smallest, entered first, and in going eight or ten feet found it began to widen, but grew no higher; I creeped along, and found a sudden descent of about three feet, down which I got and found myself standing on sand. Watson, in crawling after me, by some means extinguished his torch, which, by his holding it in the passage, had enabled me before to see my way: but now the blackest gloom surrounded us—gloom too terrific for expression. Luckily, I had brought the fireworks with me, and lighting a match, we lit both our torches, Watson having got with me on this sand bottom. We proceeded, walking upright. The dropping of water had ceased, and the sand under our feet appeared dry. At this instant my eyes met a spark of lustre just before me. I applied my torch to it, and to our joy found symptoms of gold with the sand. We soon found our conjectures were true; for going a few steps further we came to a small running stream, clear as crystal, in the bottom of which we saw thin specks of virgin gold. We now looked in every fissure of the surrounding rocks, if possible to descry some vein; but there was none to be found. We followed this stream to its discharge, under the projecting point of a rock: still strong marks of gold were visible. We gathered a small quantity in the bottom of this stream, and were about to return, when we proposed to take a little brandy and continue our search.

ceived a low, narrow, arched passage. We now stopped to consult each other with respect to the termination of this remarkable cave. I still proposed to return to the mouth, if possible, as we were much fatigued with the excursion of the day; to which he with reluctance consented. His torch being nearly consumed, I lit mine, which cheered the too visible gloom that surrounded us.

The length of time we had been in the cavern, and the continual droppings of water, together with the damp air, rendered us very uncomfortable, and we forcibly felt our need of repose. We turned about and pursued the same course we came, and on arriving at the mouth congratulated each other on our safe return. The moon shone with unusual brilliancy, and the air seemed to be filled with perfume. Such was the contrast of our momentary situations. We erected a small fire and dried our dampened clothes, took a little brandy we had yet retained; then looked a convenient place, secure as possible, and lay down with the promise of further exploring the grotto when daylight appeared. Fatigue and satisfaction soon lulled us to sleep, insensible of surrounding dangers.

We arose in the morning refreshed; the sun was not yet risen. The numerous alligators bellowed out their thanks for the return of day, and were slowly floating and swimming in every direction, in quest of food. Geese, cranes, and pelicans were flying in abundance. We made a fine breakfast on a large crane we happened to kill as he was flying close over our heads. The sun had risen, and we again made preparations to explore further

again, resolved to explore it to its end. We proceeded faster than before; came to the large ridge of loose stone, and presently came up with the before-mentioned wall. We continued along to the little arched door, the passage was just large enough to admit a man on his hands and knees. I being the smallest, entered first, and in going eight or ten feet found it began to widen, but grew no higher; I creeped along, and found a sudden descent of about three feet, down which I got and found myself standing on sand. Watson, in crawling after me, by some means extinguished his torch, which, by his holding it in the passage, had enabled me before to see my way: but now the blackest gloom surrounded us—gloom too terrific for expression. Luckily, I had brought the fireworks with me, and lighting a match, we lit both our torches, Watson having got with me on this sand bottom. We proceeded, walking upright. The dropping of water had ceased, and the sand under our feet appeared dry. At this instant my eyes met a spark of lustre just before me. I applied my torch to it, and to our joy found symptoms of gold with the sand. We soon found our conjectures were true; for going a few steps further we came to a small running stream, clear as crystal, in the bottom of which we saw thin specks of virgin gold. We now looked in every fissure of the surrounding rocks, if possible to descry some vein; but there was none to be found. We followed this stream to its discharge, under the projecting point of a rock: still strong marks of gold were visible. We gathered a small quantity in the bot-

succeeded in getting on shore alive, and was the only person who escaped this scene of death.

When we arrived in St. Jago, I immediately waited on the American consul who furnished me with such assistance as enabled me to get over a considerable of the cargo, and such other articles as were valuable; but they were comparatively very trifling, and were but a small portion of that wealth which we had when we left that place a week before; we had then a full cargo of goods, valued at 17,000 dollars, two-thirds of which was belonging to myself, and now the whole amount of my wealth did not exceed 500 dollars. This sudden reduction of my fortune occasioned a depression of spirits which it was impossible for me to overcome, and for which it was necessary that I should find some remedy, and recruit my diminished finances. But thus it is; human happiness is ever unstable; we are never certain of one hour's peace or security, and in the morning we may be possessed of affluence, and in the evening be sunk in poverty. I still, however, was calm and resigned to my fate; I looked with composure upon the scene around me, and had this cheering consolation, that although I was bereft of property, I was still breathing the pure air of nature, and looked up with gratitude to the *Author of all good*, for my preservation from many dangers and perils; to his unseen arm I was indebted for sustaining me while floating on the liquid expanse, and dashing against the rocks; and I felt no less gratitude for my safety and protection through a trackless and almost barren wilderness. In

and the haunts of the uncivilized savage, in safety ; a to repose in his tent, fearless of the spear or tomahawk.

The harbour of St. Jago is strongly fortified by natu as well as art, and is well calculated for affording refre ment to vessels. The fort is well built, and its lofty b tlements, rising from the level of the sea, afford a rom tic and picturesque prospect. The country is agreeal diversified with hills and vallies, and being always co ered with verdure has a lively and gay appearance. this fort I frequently strayed in the morning, when t gray twilight was gently retiring before those strea of gold, which are the forerunners of the glorious gent of day. The rising of the sun in this coun is uncommonly elegant, and would require the pen of a Raphael, or the descriptive powers of a Burke, to justice to it : first appears a few light clouds, whi quickly disappear and are succeeded by others still m red, until the bright king of the morning appears above t horizon. Nothing can be more grand or majestic than appearance, just rising above trees and plants eterna covered with verdure ; the feathered songsters welco his approach ; all nature seems revivified, and the bu hum of men, as they go backwards and forwards fr the shore to their vessels, together with the lowing of cattle, and other occurrences which are common o morning in this country, present a scene which is at c cheering and instructive. Mankind being by na formed for employment, it is not only necessary proper that they should commence their labour early.

store as will enable us to pass the evening of our days in peace and prosperity, and not to have the bitter reflection that we have wasted our earliest years, without deriving that profit from them which ought to be expected from our exertions.

That chain of mountains which runs through Hispaniola, has many detached parts, which are remarkable for their grandeur and beauty; they possess that bold and romantic appearance, which cannot fail to strike the beholder with awe and admiration. The part over which I more immediately went, has many beauties to recommend it to the attention of the traveller who delights in the grand and sublime. The vale from which it rises is about a mile in extent: the rise is gradual for about 600 yards, when it becomes more steep, craggy, and difficult of ascent; the view from the top amply repays you for all the toil and difficulty you undergo in arriving at its summit; you there view an extent of about seven miles in one of the finest countries in the world: the vallies and hills seem as though they were covered with a magnificent carpet, which is agreeably enriched with a thousand different colours; the magnolia, the lemon, and the orange tree, in full bloom, yield a delicious fragrance, which scents the air and gives animation to the scene. The feathered songsters tune their little throats, and warble with a melody at once exquisite and ravishing; in fact, there is no country in the world where the music of the feathered tribe is heard with such enchanting melody as in this. The stillness of the scene scarcely interrupted by the rustling of the trees, for as yet *civilized* man, as he is called, has not set his foot in a region which may

in retrospective contemplation of the scenes of horror and bloodshed, which once desolated this fair country of its aboriginal inhabitants. Born originally free and independent, they disdained to cringe at the feet of tyrants, and knew not slavery but by the name. Accustomed to elect their own chief, and dispose of their own territory, they could not behold without indignation, a set of foreigners driving them from their lands, and appropriating its riches to their use. The cruelties exercised by a Cortez, and a Pizarro, have desolated one of the finest countries in the world of more than seven millions of inhabitants. According to the estimate made by the Abbe Clavegero, there was destroyed upwards of one million in a year! And this too, by a nation professing the religion of Jesus, and who undertook the subjugation of the country for the sole purpose of obtaining converts to a religion which is all love, and is bottomed on the broad basis of infinite mercy, and of which humanity and gentleness are considered among the most radiant characteristics.

I soon met with a favourable opportunity, and returned to Kingston in the island of Jamaica. My late excursion had in a great degree reduced my finances, and had taught me to expect disappointment and trouble wherever I went. On my arrival at St. Jago I endeavoured to arrange my finances for a speedy return to the United States. My affairs were soon in such order as enabled me to look around and make such observations as would probably be of service.

St. Iago de la Vega is at present the capital of the

It stands in Middlesex county, and is at the southeast end of the island. The situation is healthy, and the soil fertile and calculated to yield all that is necessary for the support of life. It is in latitude 18° 24′ north.

Having had occasion to mention the island of Jamaica, I think it will not be improper for me to give a general description of it, as it is considered one of the finest of the West-India islands, and has been famous for its sugar plantations. This island is the largest of the Antilles, lying in latitude between 17 and 19° north, and between 77 and 79° west longitude. It is about one hundred and twenty miles in length, and seventy in breadth, and forms nearly an oval. This island was discovered by Christopher Columbus on his second voyage to America, who was much charmed with it, and preferred it to any other. It was very soon settled by the Spaniards, and continued in their possession until it was subdued by the English under the command of Admirals Penn and Venable. The staple commodity at that time was cocoa; but the planters introduced the culture of the sugar-cane, which has now become the staple of the country.

To a traveller who arrives after a tedious passage across the Atlantic, this island has a most beautiful appearance, by reason of its constant verdure. The coast is low, but rises agreeably into hills, separated by vallies. The hills are far from being unpleasant, as they are crowned to their very summit with towering trees. The streams of water are numerous and pleasant, although none of them are navigable. They give a richness and variety to the scene, and are highly delightful in a country immediately between the tropics. Thunder is very frequent, and rain-

plantations of sugar-cane. There are instances of their being so violent as to unroof houses, tear up large trees by the roots, and even to remove substances of more than two tons weight to the distance of a quarter of a mile.

The island is divided into three counties containing twenty parishes, over each of which presides a magistrate styled a Custos; but those parishes in point of size are a sort of hundreds. The whole contains thirty-six towns and villages, twenty churches, and about twenty-three thousand white inhabitants.

This island abounds in maize, pulse, vegetables of all kinds, meadows of fine grass, beautiful flowers, and as great a variety of oranges, lemons, citrons, and other rich fruits, as any island in the West-Indies. There are also useful animals of all sorts, horses, asses, mules, black cattle of a large size, and sheep, the flesh of which is well tasted, though their wool is hairy and bad. Goats and hogs are also plenty, sea and river fish, wild and tame fowls. The articles exported are sugar, cocoa, indigo, pimento, cotton, ginger, and coffee; trees for timber and other uses, such as mahogany, manchineel, whitewood, which no worm will destroy, cedar, olive, and many more. Besides these they have fustic, redwood, and various other materials for dyeing. To these may be added a multitude of valuable drugs, such as guaiacum china, sarsaparilla,. cassia, tamarinds, and the prickly pear or opuntia, which produces the cochineal; with no inconsiderable quantity of odoriferous gums. Near the coast they have salt ponds, and might make any quantity of salt they please.

As the island abounds in a number of rich articles, it has also a number of safe ports, which enable the different commodities of the country to be shipped with safety

and to advantage. Point Morant, the eastern extremity of the island, has a fair and commodious bay. Port Royal, to the south, stands on a neck of land which forms one side of it. There stood once the fairest town on this island; and the harbour is as fine a one as can be wished, capable of holding fifteen hundred large vessels, and is still the station of the English squadron. Old Harbour and Macary Bay are both of them commodious ports, and there are at least twelve more between this and the western extremity, which is Point Negrille, where ships of war lie when there is a war with Spain.

The town of Port Royal stood on a point of land running into the sea, barren and incapable of producing any thing; yet the excellence of the port, the convenience of having ships of eight hundred tons burthen coming close up to their wharves, and other advantages, gradually attracted inhabitants in such a manner, that though many of their habitations were built on piles, there were near two thousand houses in the town, which were let at high rents. The earthquake which happened in 1692 entirely overthrew the town, and destroyed a great number of its inhabitants. This earthquake was followed by an epidemic, of which great numbers died; some authors say three thousand. Yet the place was rebuilt, and again reduced, by fire, in 1703, and then the inhabitants removed to Kingston. Hurricanes since that time have been very frequent, and have occasioned terrible devastation; one in particular, in 1800, almost overwhelmed the little town of Savannah la Mar. At present there is but a small number of houses, which are chiefly owing to the importance and convenience of its harbour. A large por-

The trade of Jamaica is very considerable, and is carried on directly with Great Britain, Ireland, the United States, and Africa. The articles usually exported have been enumerated, and have generally been advantageous to the planters. By the Inspector General's report made to the British government for 1800, the amount of exports to the United States alone, amounted to 151,071*l.* sterling, whilst the imports from the same country only amounted to 125,000*l.* leaving a balance of 26,071*l.* in favour of the planters.

The principal article exported to the United States is sugar, which, as has been found by recent experiments, can be made as well in New-Orleans as in any part of the West-Indies. By affording due encouragement to the New-Orleans planters, we should soon be enabled to rival the West-Indies, and preserve the balance of trade in our own hands.

I found it necessary for me again to return to the United States; and I thought, as I intended to ascend the Red river and penetrate by that route into the interior of Mexico, I should be nearer my destined port, and likewise enabled to make such arrangements as would be necessary, by sailing again for New-Orleans. I accordingly embarked on board the ship Golden Hunter, Captain Swan, and after a pleasant passage of eighteen days arrived in the city. I immediately waited on my old friend, Dr. De Fludcar, and found him in good health and spirits, and overjoyed at my return. He informed me that he arrived safe, but had been very sick immediately after his return. He had heard of our shipwreck, and was in ap-

him my design of visiting the south of Mexico by the Red river, and he cheerfully set about procuring me such information as was in his power.

---

## CHAP. VI.

*The author leaves New-Orleans—Arrives at Natches—The number of stagnant pools highly injurious—Hires a negro—Constructs a canoe—Departure from Natches—Satisfaction of his negro—Relates his story, and promises fidelity—Arrives at the Natchitoches—Beautiful appearance of the land—Excessive fall of the dews—Arrives among the Cadoe Indians—Description of them—Vast herds of buffalo and deer—Alarmed by the arrival of Indians—Description of streams which fall into the Red river—Arrives at the cavern called Baldesod—Description of it—Singular inscription on the inside.*

I LEFT New-Orleans on the 1st Sept. for Natches, taking the nearest route, which was to cross lake Ponchartrain, from which a bayau makes up within one mile and a half of the rear of the city of New-Orleans. This lake communicates with the gulf of Mexico, and by lake Maurepas and Ibberville river it communicates with the Missisippi; it is fifty miles in length and thirty in breadth. The bayau is about eight miles, from its head to the lake, very narrow and crooked: the motion of its water is very slow

In the summer season nothing could equal the nauseous and disagreeable smells that proceed from these stagnated waters, which breed innumerable legions of musquetoes, filling the air with their music, and sparing no pains in visiting strangers, and bestowing their attentions upon the whole animal creation. As the evening approaches, the air is darkened with clouds of them, arising from the marshes and lakes. The inhabitants, for the preservation of their blood and the safety of their lives, sleep under a netting stretched over their beds, suffering rather with suffocation than to be devoured alive.

On my arrival at Natches, I formed an acquaintance with a Spanish gentleman immediately from Mexico, who informed me of the unexampled luxuriance of that country; of the disposition of the inhabitants in general, situation of the principal rivers which watered that extensive region; likewise of the numerous streams flowing through it—many of these rivers were nameless. He also informed me of the numerous mines with which the country was richly stored, some of which he described to be very extensive, which lay quite in the interior; of several nations of Indians who seemed jealous of their worth, and would prohibit any search, or the giving of any particular account respecting their situation.

I informed him of my intended route, in which he wished me great success, still questioning the propriety and prudence of my determination, which was to ascend the Red river to its source, and then to take such direction as circumstances should appear to justify. I was

I was now daily impatient, waiting for necessary preparations and arrangements for a precarious and unknown journey, from which I was withheld in the first outset by some providential cause. I now had health and strength, and was invigorated with fabulous ideas, thinking myself in the sure road to wealth and fame, forgetting all former sufferings, disappointments, and hardships. All was not sufficient to reconcile me to the idea of giving up my love of roving, and I set my own case, as it will appear, as an example for unwary youths who cultivate an early habit of wasting time in fanciful pursuits, destroying their constitutions, and flying from domestic enjoyments, in quest of that detested root of all evil, and the only object of our hearts. Such will mine appear, after several years useless toil, spent in the search of, alas! nothing.

I hired a negro, who being free soon, offered his services on reasonable terms. Having a boat of my own construction now completed, which was small, merely for the purpose of a temporary use. I spent several weeks in making preparations, and constructed a cover over the stern of my boat, that I could take down at pleasure. Besides this I prepared myself with oil skins, and a provision chest: I also purchased a number of articles fancied by the Indians, as well as drawing instruments, and paint brushes and colours, having with my uncle in London acquired the art of miniature painting. I had a good brace of pistols, but not thinking them sufficient, I purchased a rifle and tomahawk. I likewise procured a prospective glass, compass, thermometer, &c.

at my departure, and where I was destined; but all their enquiries were in vain. My boat was light, and I soon lost sight of Natches.

It was now my intention to descend the Missisippi to the mouth of Rouge or Red river, and pursue its waters to their source. I made Edom (my black fellow) acquainted with the intended tour, with which he seemed highly pleased, and desirous of gaining my good will, and of entitling himself to my confidence. No pains to please and encourage me was by any means wanting on his part. In short, I ever found Edom to be actuated by the principles of honesty and bravery.

The weather being extremely warm, my awning of canvass was spread, which afforded a goodly shade, without which the heat would have been intolerable. On the 6th the thermometer stood at 98° at ten o'clock in the morning. There was not the smallest breeze stirring, which is something uncommon, and what I considered as a forerunner of convulsive winds and rain. I never before felt heat so intolerable. The pitch ran in every direction on my little boat. It continued so till three o'clock, when the heavens were clouded with darkness until it was relieved by heavy rain and hail, accompanied with such tremendous shocks of thunder that in a little time the stores of nature seemed exhausted, and a cooling breeze succeeded. This was the first trial I had of my oil-cloths, which kept me perfectly dry, as well as my apparatus.

My negro seemed to be delighted with having an opportunity of displaying his enterprising disposition, and in the thickest of the storm would use every exertion;

out, Ah, massa, dis be notten what we see yet. After the storm had subsided I set him to bailing out the boat: I then informed him of the dangers to which we should in all probability be exposed from the elements, as well as from the wilds of the country, and that the length of our tour was uncertain. I likewise told him of the object of my pursuit, adding if he would be faithful to me he should reap a share of any profit which might accrue from the undertaking. He consented to every proposal, and I now had an African born negro for my companion. He was six feet two inches high, and would weigh 260 pounds.

On the 7th, at night, we reached the mouth of Red river. We came too after entering, and encamped for the night, having made a small fire and smoke, in order to sleep more securely from musquetoes. After we had taken a little supper, I sat down meditating on my plans. My distracted brain filled me with such impatience that I thought every moment an hour. The fatigue of the day had wearied us both; but I observed Edom busied in some reflection, and with a very thoughtful air. A kind of melancholy ensued as he turned his eyes towards the dying colours of the west. I watched him for some time, and at length asked him if he wished he was at Natches. He firmly replied, No: but, says he, I was just thinking of my tired life, and the trouble I had seen. I then requested him to relate the account. He took his seat near me, and began as follows:

"I was brought to this country about twenty years ago, by the Portuguese, who sold me to a very ugly man

not for some time handle the tools belonging to the plantation; I was whipped almost every day, and was sinking under a pressure of trouble too great for me to bear, when a kind providence interceded, and I was for a short time at ease, by being confined on board a ship; but I was sorely pinched with hunger, and knew not my destiny. Having been torn from a loving wife who I had lately married, and crammed with several of my companions slaves in the hold of the ship, and there suffocating with heat, hunger, and anguish;—but as I said before, I was again sold and went on board a ship; I had done nothing, but run away from my master, and gone to work for another man; this so enraged him that he tied me down to the ladder and gave me seventy lashes, which was near being my end. Finding I was not now able to work, he sold me. I was then taken to St. Domingo, and was made to work with a great chain to my feet, which galled me sorely. My new master was, if possible, worse than the other. I one day was very sick, and was scarcely able to move, though I had much more to do, for I had my chain to carry, as well as to roll a wheelbarrow with stone, as we were building a fort. My sickness continued a few days, when I sunk down on the ground with acute pains in every part of my body, such as I had never experienced before. I had not lain in this posture long before my pains were increased by the tormenting whip of the overseer, who said as he gave me sixty lashes, that he would teach me to be stubborn. My back was quite raw: I could not rise from the ground when I was told, but lay still; at which he began to kick

cellar; I gave free vent to my anguish, and prayed to be out of existence. The next day there was brought three more who were whipped, and the blood running in streams from their backs. After the master had left the cell, my poor companions informed me that they were to receive thirty more lashes in the morning, and for no other crime than that of having been asleep; they also informed me of their hearing the master say I was to receive fifty. This news did not shock me, hoping it might put me to an end; I resolved, however, that I would not die alone. In the morning one of my companions was taken out and whipped. His cry awakened me from melancholy to anger. After whipping him they sent him to work, and took out the two remaining prisoners, leaving me for the last. I was now resolved on death or victory. While they were executing this horrid deed on my companions, I with some exertions got off my chain, and hunting about the cellar, I found a broken spade. I placed myself by the door, and heard curses threatened against me. When the overseer entered I had new strength, and made a blow with the edge of my spade, and soon brought him down; I repeated my blows, and had the pleasure of seeing his brains. During this time he had cried for help, and now came down two or three others, one of which I knocked down; the others seized me, and bound me with iron bands. I was now in hopes of immediate death; but I had other scenes to encounter. Thinking it would be losing too much

before experienced, and if I should explain every particular, it would cause a hatred to all people of your colour, though I have since found amongst them the exercise of the true principles of virtue and charity. I shall only say, that I could not endure it; I therefore set out, I knew not whither, but made shift to travel by night till I got to Natches. A worthy gentleman there took compassion on my distressed situation. Knowing from my account I had ran away, he advertised me in the papers, and my master soon appeared. I could see determined fury in his countenance. I fell on my knees before my new master, begging him to relieve me from my impending ruin, and to my great joy I found they were making a bargain; I soon saw the demon depart, and was in a world of happiness. I served my good master with care. He kept me to the boating business for several years. He then called me to his house for his favourite servant. Soon after, he was taken ill, to my great mortification, and died. In his will he left me about five hundred dollars, and my freedom. This money was soon swindled from me, and I hired with a gentleman for one year, when I came across you, and I hope you will be a good master, and I will be a good negro. I don't fear any thing if I can please my new master."

It was now late, and I retired to sleep. Knowing by the run of his conversation the turn of his disposition, I felt much pleased with him. I told him that whatever might have been the manner in which he was abused, it would be nothing in comparison to what he would suffer

colour is caused from a red clay on the banks. The mouth of the river is in latitude 29° 50′ north. There are a few settlements at the mouth, where they raise cotton and indigo. We had some wind this day, to which we set our little sail, and ran about ten miles. My negro was well acquainted with the boating business, and he worked up the little boat with astonishing alacrity. The weather still continued warm, and we had frequent showers of rain, which watered the thirsty plains and afforded new life to the animal and vegetable creation.

On the 15th my negro killed a deer, which afforded us a fresh supply of provisions. We could discover that we should have game in plenty, which afforded me great satisfaction. The dry season had now commenced. We made considerable progress, and on the 20th came to a most beautiful tract of country called the Natchitoches. This was the frontier on the Spanish settlements some years back, and is about 125 miles from the confluence of the Red river with the Missisippi. Here the land appears swelling in gentle hillocks, affording a rich pasture to the innumerable herds of cattle and horses which appear in every direction. There are some very extensive plantations in this settlement. Their general produce is corn, cotton, tobacco, indigo, &c. The cattle may be had for six dollars. Swine run wild, and are in great abundance. They begin their cultivation the first of March. During the growth of the season they have sufficient rains to keep a moisture in the lands; but in September and October, when they enter their second crop,

often known to fall in such a manner as to be seen running in little streams on the ground, as if shewing charity to the thirsty soil, and giving beauty and verdure to the landscape.

The inhabitants here are chiefly Spanish, but intermixed with French, and a few Americans. Diseases are not so prevalent here as on the Missisippi: the air is more salubrious and wholesome, and not so liable to contagious diseases. Their manner of living is very temperate, and the richness of the soil is congenial with their indolence, producing a plentiful supply of provisions without much labour in cultivation.

After remaining in these settlements for a few days we again pursued our course up this river, which runs east and west in its general course. A few days brought us to a nation of Indians, called the Cadoes, who inhabit a fine tract of country lying on the north side of the Red river. A creek emptying into this river I pursued till I found it to be settled with wigwams and Indian huts. During my stay amongst them I was well treated. The Chief informed me that their forefathers sprang from a race of people towards the setting sun, and that they had by wars been reduced to about fifteen hundred.

These Indians are of small stature in comparison with the other tribes east of the Missisippi: they live principally by fishing and hunting deer, which are in great abundance. They have had the Gospel amongst them, as well as a teacher of the English language; but their labour was met with coolness. Many of them speak the Spanish

He shewed me his armour, which was worn by his great-grandfather, who never saw a white man. His grandfather, he informed me, had had many conflicts with the Spaniards, as well as his own father; but they had now given up all idea of combating so powerful a nation as the whites. He believed the Great Spirit would yet restore them all their lands, and banish the aggressors.

This little tribe are very filthy in their way of living, only washing themselves on particular days, as a kind of ordinance. They seem not to have that jealous disposition with regard to their wives which other tribes have.

They informed me of a number of tribes that lived towards the setting sun; that some of them were very numerous, and disliked the white men. They also told me that precious metals and stones were found amongst them, but they were jealous of their rights and would not suffer any search from strangers, and that they held correspondence with no one except some particular Spaniards, who by intrigue had pried into their secrecy, and by insinuating little presents had received from them much wealth.

My boat and apparatus excited much wonder. Some few of these Indians raise corn, which they pound and boil. They informed me that they should in a few days have a grand hunting party, and invited me to stay; but as I had now wasted much time, I concluded to proceed.

These nations inhabit a fine tract of country, beautiful elevations, and delightful vallies glowing with wild verdure. Such a country ought to be fostered by an industrious hand, and not left in waste by indolence and sloth.

Oct. 30. We were escorted out of this bayau into the river by the chief [illegible]

silver bands, and a ring in his nose of nine inches in circumference, handed down from his great-grandfather. He had an open countenance which bespoke his bravery, and his deportment was complete. Though age had procured him a few silver hairs, yet he did not appear to be over thirty-five years. Contagious diseases are never amongst them; this is a plain evidence that diseases arise more from intemperance and high living, than from the natural effects of a climate. Although the savages are not blessed with the luxuries of life, yet they enjoy health, which ought to be prized above all other blessings in life.

We again began to ascend the Red river. It is here about two or three hundred yards wide, and the water had become clearer, the banks more elevated, and we had a stronger current to contend with, for several days together. We now passed extensive priaries, and in many places the eye found no relief, until it would meet land at a distance. These plains afford a rich pasture to the deer and buffalo, which may be seen in droves; still they are very wild.

On the 6th Nov. I killed some deer. Having a mind to take a little view of the country, I concluded to leave Edom with my boat; accordingly I took my gun and some ammunition, and set out on one of the priaries. I travelled a considerable distance, without meeting any thing worthy of note. At length coming to a little spot of low ground, I discovered a beaten path to extend quite round it, and lead off in a certain direction; I followed for three or four miles, where it forked; I kept the main

which would often dart across my path. The weeds had now become as high as my head, when I found fresh signs of game, and undiscovered I crawled within twenty paces of several deer, feeding like sheep. I singled out one that was nearest, and took deliberate aim, when my gun snapped; they instantly threw up their heads. I again cocked, and just as they were making off, I brought one down. It now seemed as if bedlam had broke loose. Herds of deer and buffalo were running in every direction, leaping to the top of the weeds to discover from whence the alarm proceeded, and discovering the smoke of my gun, darted off with such swiftness that they were instantly out of sight. I approached the one I had shot, which lay in the agonies of death, and reared itself for an attack, but was too weak. I cut its throat, and took off its skin, and the best of the flesh that I could conveniently carry, and started for my boat. I reached it about sunset. We then prepared a fire, and cooked our venison, which was very excellent.

This night I was a little alarmed at a circumstance that occurred: Our fire was extinguished, and we lay very composedly; but were awakened by a low voice. I raised up my head cautiously, and found there were a few Indians in a canoe, coming close alongside of my boat. They did not discover us, as we lay on the shore. I demanded who was there, and was answered in Spanish. I invited them on shore, and they soon complied with my request. They belonged to the tribe we had passed a few days before. After informing them that we had been in

mile from the river where they were—that the river took a great turn, running a south course for some distance. They agreed to remain with me till morning, and we made up a fire. I was much pleased with their company. One of them had an instrument of music of simple construction, in the form of a flute, excepting that he blowed in the end; it was about two feet long, and their tunes were very striking, and carried along with them such a natural air, accompanied by their voices, that my negro fell a dancing, which much diverted the Indians.

These friendly Indians wished to trade for some of my ammunition, offering me a number of otter and beaver skins; having no use for them on my tour, I refused to take any, but presented them with some powder and lead, for which I was ten thousand times thanked, and also in return received some roots of different kinds, to make use of in time of sickness, explaining their virtue; one in particular for the bite of a snake, describing the leaf, that I might at any time be able to procure it. This I put in my medicine chest, as being of great worth. Next morning we took leave of them, and proceeded. This day we passed several tributary streams, some of them of considerable size. We now had much bad weather; owing to this, our progress was slow.

November 15. We found ourselves in a kind of bay, formed by the junction of three rivers, namely, the Willput on the right, the Kindas on the left, and above these a creek; all of these falling together into the Red river, formed a kind of bay nearly three quarters of a mile wide. A little above this, on the left shore, we saw a clearing, which attracted my attention. We came too, and after

ancient fortress. Though there were a few scattering trees of immense size, yet it bore marks of having been once inhabited. The form was an oblong square, with a kind of broken breastwork that would scarcely be noticed without particularly examining it. In the rear of this was a kind of hollow path covered over with shrubs, leading to a beautiful spring, which I found to be artificially stoned. Every thing appeared ancient. I took a particular observation of the place and proceeded.

Continuing our course, on the 20th Nov. the clustered summits began to appear, and looked over us with astonishing magnificence. The river is here for miles compressed within narrower bounds than ordinary, and runs with greater rapidity. Being broken with rocks, the passage is in many places rough and dangerous. About the middle of these towering precipices is the noted cavern called by the Spaniards Baldesod, which my curiosity induced me to visit. We came up with it on the 22d, about twelve o'clock. The river being then in a high stage of water, deterred me at first from entering, as the mouth was situated near the margin of the river. However, the mouth being spacious, with all ease admitted us to row in for several yards, where the bows struck a rock and our passage was impeded. I stepped forward and found a few feet of perpendicular ascent perfectly dry. I was now determined to see the recesses of this cave; accordingly I backed out, and after taking a little dinner, (during which time Edom procured some torch-wood,) I entered, but not without some caution. I stepped up from the boat on the ascent, and gave Edom his orders to stand there in readiness if I should be in want of him

tonishing as this may appear, they were perfectly plain, though partly covered over with a little moss. There were also curious images; one amongst the rest was that of an Indian and white man shaking hands together; near which was the resemblance of a canoe in a sinking condition, and a white man swimming towards the shore: also the resemblance of a man's hand pointing into the gloomy recesses of the cavern. This last awakened my curiosity. On proceeding a little farther the passage became narrow and contracted, winding a little to the left. A few yards more brought me into a magnificent hall of at least forty feet in circumference, in the centre of which, horrible to my view, I saw a vast number of human bones. A kind of gloomy buz hummed along the passage. I stood fixed to the spot in amazement. (I own my timidity on such an occason.) Proceeding a little farther, my passage was stopped by the falling of water, which nearly extinguished my torch. I retreated from this awful spectacle, and could form but a faint idea of its meaning. I returned to the mouth with heartfelt satisfaction, and proceeded my way up the river, meditating on what I had discovered. 1st, I was astonished at the date, which could not have been done by an Indian. 2d, This date being placed immediately under the figure of the white man and Indian, both must have been done at the same time, and with the same instrument. 3d, The bones could not have remained for that length of time, but would have decayed into dust; those I supposed to have been deposited there some time after the carving was executed.

## CHAP. VII.

*The author arrives among the Uames Indians—Received with coldness—Quarrel between Edom and the Indians—Gains the confidence of the chief—Description of the Uames—Informed of a silver mine—Reluctance of the Indians to discover it—Sets out to discover the mine—Critical situation of the author—Branch of the Red river—Author ascends it—Salt spring—Immense herds of buffalo—Author returns to the Red river—Sickness of his negro man—Impossibility of navigating the river without him—Arrives among the Ilisees Indians—Author agrees to accompany them—Becomes alarmed for his safety—Apprehensions removed—Meets a Spaniard—Some account of the Ilisees—Copper mine—Indian hunt—Description of Lake Wauteputsa—Admiration of the Indians on seeing a sail-boat—Author parts with his boat and purchases horses—Separates from the Indians and journies over land to the source of Red river.*

At the beginning of December the journey was becoming very irksome, and was rendered more so by constant rains and the rapidity of the current: however, to the head of the river I must go. About the 15th of December I arrived amongst a nation of Indians called the Uames. At the first interview I was received with coldness and jealousy. I had now to walk discreetly in every undertaking. My negro was no less suspicious than myself. A small village situated on the south shore was the port at which I stopped. The shores were seen

Spanish language. Leaving Edom with the boat, I repaired to the chief, who was about seventy years old: he spoke the Spanish language, and made much inquiry with respect to my business in his nation. I replied that I had no other view than that of seeing the country. He told me immediately of the strength of his warriors. However, after a further interview he used me with civility. I had remained in his habitation till about dusk, when I was surprised at hearing a tumultuous noise at the river. Supposing Edom to be in some difficulty, I hastened down, and found him contending with an Indian about some liquor. Having been asked by the Indian for some whiskey, he refused him, telling him he had none; but soon after he took the liberty in my absence to make free use of it himself, which he had never done before. The Indian, discovering him pouring some out, stepped into the boat, and was about to help himself, when he was strenuously prohibited by Edom. A scuffle ensued, which might have proved alarming had I not been near. This trivial affair could be settled in no other way than by giving each of them a small taste of brandy, which I did with reluctance, not for the value of the liquor, but the effects it might have on their dispositions.

I gave a few trifling articles to the chief, who was highly pleased with them. They were a few of my paintings, representing birds, horses, Indians, &c. After this he invited me to spend the night with him, assuring me there was no danger of any further interruption with my property in the boat: many of the most valuable articles I had taken out and kept concealed.

large enough to cover their waists, and a pair of mockasons made of deer-skin. The women wear a blanket or skin thrown loosely around them. Like all other tribes they expose their infants to the elements, and inure them to hardships, thus rendering their constitutions adequate to the different scenes of their life. Soon after the child is born they plunge it into water, in order to prepare it in time for that element: they carry it naked on their back, with the head down, exposing it to the scorching beams of the sun; and thus used on its entering the world, it becomes hardy, robust, and dauntless. When a few months old they slit their ears and put in leaden weights, which, in length of time, give them a singular appearance, having a part of their ears hanging quite down to their shoulders.

They are very strict in the execution of their laws, and never grant a reprieve. If a woman commits adultery she has her two last fingers cut off; the man but his little finger;—then they are banished from society, the husband not marrying in two years after. The laws are all appointed by the three chiefs belonging to the tribe.

The towns, or camps, are supported by hunting parties, who are very expert in killing their game, having no other weapon than that of a bow and arrows. The choicest game is culled out for the chief.

Their country is well adapted to corn and other grain, but they are too indolent even to clear their lands. I took the liberty of asking the chief some questions respecting agriculture, and whether he would not prefer tilling of lands to living in this way? To which he answered, that the Great Spirit had shown the white men arts and sciences while they were in a poor country, (Europe,) and that he had given the red men an extensive country, full

of game; that contrary to the expectations of the Great Spirit, the white people had crossed the big waters and come amongst them to make them unhappy; that the Great Spirit would yet visit the red men with greater knowledge than he did the whites. He said that if there had been no game given to the red men, they should have had something else provided for them, and that they do not waste so much of their time to get wealth, but live contentedly; they do not expose themselves to the big waters, and make slaves of poor black men. At this last sentence he started up, and with a firm voice said, why do they not make slaves of the Indians; no, no, we will die under the most excruciating tortures before we submit;—and remember, the Great Spirit has endowed us with fortitude; he has also freed our minds of any such black crimes; we only contend for our rights, for our lands, of which we have been so often cheated.

The old man's argument had deep impression on my mind; though delivered in a simple style, it was sound, and if pronounced by the learned, it would shine with brilliancy before the highest court in the United States.

They had several horses which were presented to them by the Spaniards; these they use for the purpose of hunting, to which they are trained up with the greatest care.

During my stay with these Indians they held a dance, which, notwithstanding the wild appearance of it, was conducted with the greatest harmony, each one keeping step with their pow-wow. After the men had gone through their exercises, the women commenced with such an ease and elegance of manner, that it was at once pleasing and enticing. Their dance continued till about 12 o'clock, when the chief came and asked me if I had

any whiskey. Knowing that they knew I had some, I thought proper to own the truth. I had about a gallon left, and repaired to my boat where I found Edom asleep, covered with oil skins. It now began to rain. I took about two quarts of brandy up with me, hiding the rest. The dance broke up in consequence of the rain, and we repaired to their huts, where they soon drank up their whiskey. The old man got a little boozey, and began to tell how much he loved me, and informed me he would the next day show me a place of metals. I was much pleased with this conversation, but was soon deprived of it by his falling asleep. I now went down to my boat and crept in with my faithful Edom.

Next morning I gave Edom his orders, and again repaired to the hut. The old chief was a little out of order at his stomach, but soon got over it. I now put him in mind of his promise the preceding evening, at which he was astonished, denying his ever telling me any thing of the kind. When I showed him a small piece of silver ore which he had presented me, he began to curse the brandy as being the instigator of his folly. I smiled, and told him nothing should be betrayed on my part, and that if it was repugnant to his wish, I should not further insist. After studying for some time, he suddenly consented to show me the place of metals, and seemed highly pleased in the undertaking. He consulted with some of his principal men, and sent two of them with me that could not speak Spanish. After travelling for near two days you may well imagine the critical situation in which

them the piece of silver ore; still they would point to the lead mine. Finding all in vain, I returned with them to the village, after having had a rough travel of about ninety miles.

The old fellow smiled as I entered his hut, and laughed in his sleeve at the intrigue. I told him I was much disappointed. His answer was, that all he was to do was to let me see a place of metals; by this I naturally suspected there was silver in abundance.

Edom was much alarmed at my long stay, but said that no one had been there to disturb him except the old chief, who looked so grand that he thought if master had been there he would have given him some brandy; that he gave him a little, upon which the chief became very sociable, and talked with him a great while; that he pretended to understand him, and answered him yes at every word, till he asked for more whiskey, he then answered him no; the chief then went home, and glad enough was poor Edom.

It was now time for me to proceed on my voyage; but it was with regret that I left such strong marks of silver. Pressed forward by an impulse of future prosperity, I again started on the 25th of December. The weather had now become much cooler, and the travelling more agreeable. A few days' journey brought us to a large branch of the Red river, which emptied in through a cluster of rocks, forming an amphitheatre of astonishing height. I had the curiosity to ascend this branch for a considerable distance, where I found the country to be

had with us some fresh provision, which we cooked for our supper. The scent of our venison attracted many hungry visitors, which kept up an incessant howling during the night, but not approaching within an hundred yards of our fire.

I arose as daylight appeared, admiring the wonders of creation. Being determined on taking a tour with my gun, I took Edom with me, after securing the boat. We proceeded in the woods for some distance, and found the ground began to get low and marshy in many places. We saw signs of buffalo having formed a kind of path, which we followed for a mile, and found it end at a salt spring. The spring afforded a considerable stream, which I found to be extremely salt, leaving in its course a kind of salt slime. The water inclined rather to a reddish colour. The ground for several rods around was beaten, and appeared to be often visited by wild beasts. I was resolved to spend the night by this spring, and sent Edom back to the boat for some articles which I wanted. He returned about two o'clock: we then made a small ambuscade near the spring with a tree standing nearly in front, and waited with patience for our game. Some time in the night we heard, as it were, a multitude of footsteps on the march to the salt lick. On coming near the spring they stopped, snuffing and smelling, as if all was not right. We kept closely concealed till they approached the spring. I took the pains to count them, and found the herd to consist of ten buffalo. Exulting with joy, I let loose at one of them which was within a rod of me, and shot him dead. The report of my gun

lightning through the thicket. I sat some minutes to hear the confusion my firing had occasioned: the sound at length died away, after echoing and re-echoing up and down the river. I found the buffalo I had shot quite dead: he was very large, and of the male kind. We took off his skin by torch light, and in the morning returned to the boat with what we could conveniently carry. The skin I found to be of great service after it was properly cured, and the buffalo, though far from being the best of meat, was very serviceable. Flushed with the success I had gained, and the singularity of my tour, I thought myself almost invincible. We returned to the Red river.

I now dwelt with rapture on the discoveries I expected to make, and it was my chief happiness to have these consolating thoughts strengthened by past occurrences. The second day after our leaving this creek, my negro was taken sick, which was a great disappointment to me. I endeavoured to work along the boat, but it was in vain, having no person to steer; I now saw my want of him more than ever. I concluded to encamp until he might recover. I stopped on a small island about half a mile in circumference, where I fixed up a small habitation, and began to doctor my poor negro, who was very ill with a fever. I administered to him according to the best of my abilities, and had the satisfaction of seeing him better in a few days. During his sickness I would frequently take a tour on the main shore with my gun, and found game in plenty; I saw many bears, and a few of the catamount species, which I rather feared than loved.

ɔol and frosty in the morning and evening, succeeded
ɣ long storms, which made our situation very unpleas-
ıt.

I now reached a nation of Indians who called them-
lves the Ilisees tribe, having quite a different appear-
ıce from any I had yet seen. I discovered them by
eir canoes, six in number, which lay in a small bayau.
went on shore and waited their arrival, expecting they
ould soon return. They did not come back until about
ınset, when I had just shoved off, and was going up,
hen they called me back in a kind of broken Spanish
ıguage. I returned, and they all expressed their
endship, shaking hands with me in turn, and telling
e by signs and broken Spanish, that they lived about
ıe day's journey to the south, and insisted on my ac-
ɔmpanying them thither; at which I shook my head;
ıt they almost forcibly insisted, and I at length con-
nted. We all entered a creek, which I before thought
be a bayau, and proceeded by Indian file till night
'ertook us. We all stopped, and they commenced
ting their camps. I did not feel well with respect to
r safety, as they had much confederacy together; and
ıring the whole night I did not close my eyes in sleep.
hey kept up a pow-wow during the night around a few
ıall fires. I was sometimes diverted to hear them
ock the owls and wolves, which would so exactly cor-
ɜpond with their sound that it would be impossible to
ɜtinguish them, changing their tones from the gruffest
ıice up to the keenest shrill. These and many other of
ɜir manœuvres, kept sleep from my eyes; yet I would
etend to be wholly unconcerned. We pitched our lit-

Spaniard who had been with them for the space of six moons, and that he had no desire to leave them.

On receiving this information, my apprehensions were all removed with regard to the plot I before suspected. When we arrived at the village, which was the next day about twelve o'clock, I was escorted before the chief, who sat in a drowsy position in his wigwam. I made immediate inquiry for the Spaniard. A small council was held among the Indians, in consequence of which I did not see him until the next day, and then to my great mortification I found him in a revery and almost speechless: he spake but few words, and none of these were satisfactory. I now had the mortification to see that one of his ears was cut off close to his head: this seemed to be a satisfactory proof of his former character. He confessed that he was American born, and that he had been led to commit a criminal act in the first settlement of the Missisippi territory, on Pearl river; that he was cropped and banished; that he was the derision of every person he met with, and had sought to hide himself from the view of men in the wilderness, until it should please God to take him from the world; and that he had at length come to this nation, in which he had found protection. He assured me that they were a cunning artful people, and apt to plunder, especially horses, for which they go a great distance. He informed me that the whole nation amounted to near two thousand; that they have but one gun, which belonged to the chief; that their weapons

which he supposed to be extensive, but that the difficulty in getting to it was greater than the profits arising from it; but at no great distance there was a mine of copper which he had seen, and which was unknown to the Indians. We clandestinely visited this spot, and found a vein which we supposed to be nearly half a mile in length.

During this time I was informed that the Indians were to have a hunting party in a day or two, and was invited to stay as it would be very diverting, and was to be on a small lake situated about two miles west of the town. This lake communicated with the river by a small creek. After some deliberation, having had an invitation from them in general, I consented to stay. I was armed with a good never-missing rifle and a pair of belt pistols. The day of our departure from the little town on our hunting tour, was ushered in by a serene sky, and we started with the rising sun. The Indians had been previously preparing arrows, and equipping themselves in the best possible manner. It was evident that their object was to outdo me. This I was very willing they should. I cast myself a few balls, cleaned my rifle, and fixed the chief's gun, which I found to be in a bad predicament, rusty both inside and out, and not having been charged in two years. I cleaned it as well as possible, cut him a few shot for the day, and gave him powder accordingly.

We arrived at the lake in about an hour, myself and Edom in my boat, and the others, twenty in number,

On this lake and adjacent, there is game in abundance, especially at this time of the year, and they only appointed certain days to sport on this sacred place; there were geese, ducks, cranes, and pelicans, in thousands, as well as deer, buffalo, and other land game that kept principally on the west side, where I was informed were a number of small salt licks. The white man that was with them refused to accompany us for some reason that I did not understand; but after we had entered, he came along the shore, keeping at a little distance, in order not to disturb the game. The Indians would paddle their canoes with astonishing velocity and exactness. We had come near the centre island in the lake, and as yet had discovered no game of consequence; but towards the head the water was alive with geese. The Indians all got under cover of a small island, and approached in Indian file, not making the least noise in paddling, which I observed, and muffled my oar with some spare cloth I had with me. We had now reached the island, and all followed the chief hunter in a line, putting me in the rear even of my negro. We crossed the island and came behind an artificial breastwork, situate immediately on the bank. After placing themselves in a proper attitude, those who had arrows discharged them first, which did not seem to create any alarm among the geese; several were shot through, and surrounded by others squalling so that I could not hear myself speak. After a few were killed with arrows, the old chief fired his gun, but with no other effect than that

pelican, crane, and goose; soon after we discovered a number of cranes hovering around us, and at length alighting at some distance on our starboard bow. The Indians let fly a volly of arrows, but the distance was too great. I had yet retained my fire, and was quite in the rear; bidding Edom to ease his oars, I levelled my rifle and fired about 250 yards, and had the pleasure to see one shot dead. This much pleased the chief, who began to sing with vehemence, but was not followed by the others. I now told Edom to show his dexterity in rowing, which he did, feathering his oars. We now reached the crane, and returned, presenting it to the chief. The Indians all lay in a row, in silent amazement, as I approached the chief, who was making all signs of satisfaction in his power. I fired off one of my pistols as a salute.

The game being dispersed, they all began to show their skill in the management of their canoes, and held a kind of play which I could not understand. Meantime a fine breeze sprang up on the lake: I now thought that it was my time to show them an example. We bent our little sail, and hoisted it up with an *O-he-o-hea-vo:* it caught the wind, and we moved with great celerity, and with such ease that it surprised the Indians. Having at times a beam wind, it would keel up our little boat till she would take in water at the gunwale. We sailed quite to the head of the lake and fired several salutes, then beating down against the wind far below them, and then

begged permission to ride with me, suspecting I had the power of the Great Spirit. I took him in, and after taking a few turns lowered my sail.

The sun had now sunk to its western bed, and the breeze died away. Nothing could exceed the beauty of the evening, and the romantic situation I was placed in. The rays of the sun were shedding their last lustre on the lake, and trembling as they departed. The wild appearance of the savages, and the melancholy aspect of every thing about the lake, brought Edom to a revery. As we were all returning the Indians began a song, keeping time with their paddles, which continued until we reached the shore. Here we were met by the Spaniard, who congratulated me upon my success, and expressed the pleasure he had felt at seeing a little sail once more spread, a pleasure which he had not enjoyed for twelve years.

We returned to our encampment, where I was introduced to some squaws I had not before seen. The chief now kept constantly urging me to sell my boat; but I informed him it was the only means I had to continue my travels, and strongly refused parting with it. He now seemed resolved, and told me I should not take it out of his nation. I seemed to pay no regard to his resolution, and was making preparations to depart, when I was told by the Spaniard they were in earnest, and that I could trade my boat for horses, but if I refused they would take it from me according to their custom, making their own bargains. I felt much chagrined at this piece of information, and made strict enquiry concerning the country still westward. He informed me that the source of the Red river was about ninety miles further, a southwesterly

and that after getting over the dividing ridge the country was beautiful, and filled with extensive priaries.

I now suddenly changed my mode of travelling, and sold my boat for two small Spanish horses. I remained with them long enough to make a couple of saddles after a temporary fashion, and saddle-bags, which were made of my oil cloth.

The poor old chief liked his boat extremely well, but could not manage his sails. He appointed a day in which to make trial, the wind being strong from the northeast. I advised the Spaniard to accompany him, for fear of some accident; but the chief would have the sole management of it himself. A sudden flaw of wind upset them, but fortunately it happened where the water was not more than waist deep. By the Spaniard's help she was soon righted and bailed out. The chief then gave up the management to the white man, who conducted him with safety over this little sea.

Time was now passing swiftly away, and I determined to proceed. After contriving a sort of bridle for each horse, with saddles and stirrups, and loading our equipage, we started forward, making a most singular appearance. Edom seemed well pleased with this way of travelling, choosing it in preference to rowing; and indeed I thought it the more expeditious.

We left this little town, called by the Indians Wascoo, on the 10th of January, 1810.

## CHAP. VIII.

*More particular description of the Ilisees—Traditions of the natives—Superstitions respecting the sun—Danger from wild beasts—Enormous wolf—Distress for want of water—Apprehensions of an attack from the Indians—Violent storm—Picturesque appearance of the country—Arrives at a settlement of Spaniards and Indians—Hospitable entertainment—Story of my Spanish host—Parathee Indians—Some account of them—Cocoa nuts—General observations on the climate, &c.*

THE Ilisees tribe are a well made people, of large stature, with high, square foreheads, sloping a little back; their complexion is lighter than any I had yet seen; their hair had a kind of reddish cast mixed with a shining black. They believe that the sun is the greatest being in existence, and that thunder and lightning were at his command; they also suppose the moon to be a yilcoo, or wife of the sun, and that the stars are their offspring; that since the white people began to settle their country, the Great Spirit was striving to scare them off by sickness, and by shaking the earth,* in many places, especially on the Missisippi; that the red men are the favourites of the sun.

Their women are beautifully featured and have pleasant countenances, mixed with a certain modesty peculiar to their sex. The boys are early taught the use of the bow and arrow, and the girls the art of making little fancy

To be acquainted with their true disposition would require much experience; but as far as I could discover, they were arbitrary and self-willed. They supposed that they originated from a people far towards the east, or rising sun; that they were at war with some of the tribes in that place, and were defeated; that a few of them, according to the account of their forefathers, had come to this country, having crossed big mountains, and come down two big waters, (the Ohio and Missisippi rivers,) and then up the Red river, until they found a country that suited them, being neither too hot nor too cold; that the time that their ancestors came here was before there were any white men.

The white man I found with them seemed rejoiced to see me again set out. From this circumstance I concluded there must either be something in the nation that attracted his attention, or he had no pleasure in seeing a white man. I could get from him no particulars of his life, as he would immediately change the subject to something else. He seemed much depressed, and would often utter inarticulate words with a deep sigh, which I supposed to proceed from a heavy heart. He slept with me the night before my departure; in his sleep he seemed much troubled, and at one time exclaimed, O my wife and children! This man must certainly have been unhappy, and was lingering out a life of wretchedness and misery; he had probably committed some desperate act, and to avoid reproaches had wandered into this obscure region.

The superstition of this tribe in regard to the sun's power is very extraordinary. When one of them dies,

morning, and following him till he sets in the west: it then closes up till morning, and again opens with the day. This they believe will conduct them safely to that element, as the saviour of their souls. After this piece of superstition is completed, the dead are buried, and the above-mentioned plant is transplanted on their grave: if it should live, they believe their departed friend has arrived at his blessed abode; but should the plant not live, they suppose the fact established, that the person on whose grave it was placed, remains dead as the beasts of the woods for ever. After the burial is over, they seek to forget their sorrow in a festal dance.

I set out from this tribe on the before-mentioned day, with an escort of a number of the natives, who accompanied me to the head of the lake, and returned. By the directions I had received from the Spaniard. with regard to the source of the river, I concluded to steer west northwest. I was much better equipped than might be expected, having a small axe something larger than a tomahawk, for which I calculated to have great use. The first day, we lengthened our course by taking a circuitous route to avoid bogs and morasses. At night we encamped on a little priarie, which afforded a good bait for our horses. We gathered some fuel and erected a small fire, the weather being quite cool. We tied our horses head and foot, not following the directions we had received from the Indians, who told us that we could let them run at large and they would not leave us; but being apprehensive of some intrigue, and that they by these means expected to get their horses again, we were cautious.

it resembled the blue grass, and though it was something withered they ate it with greediness.

But this night was rendered very unpleasant by the constant roar of the wolves which surrounded us in an open field. Our horses kept near the fire, and would shudder at their tremendous howl. They often approached so near to us, as to be seen very plainly during the forepart of the night, and towards morning they became quite alarming, and would approach within pistol shot. What rendered our case more dangerous, was the scarcity of fuel, and there being none handy; we used what we had with economy, but at length it was quite extinguished, and only a few embers left: these we scattered round, which caused a momentary terror in the wolves. I was now resolved to try my rifle at one which cautiously approached towards our horses: I levelled between his eyes, and shot him dead upon the spot. This caused a dreadful howling through the woods, which in a short time died away, and few more were heard till daylight appeared, which to me was the most glorious light I had ever beheld, as I had but one more ball cast, and no fire or fuel. Between daylight and sunrise I cast about 150 balls. We cooked provision for the day, and continued our journey.

The length of the wolf I had killed was six feet ten inches from the snout to the end of the tail; the tail measured two feet. It was of a ground colour, with a black list or streak running along the back; its teeth were long and sharp; its body was slim and poor, and its ribs distinctly to be seen, shewing its want of food;

January 11th. Passed through an extensive tract of open priaries, which afforded neither water nor provender for our horses. We were about encamping for the night without either, or even fuel to make a fire; but considering the danger we had passed the night before, and that our situation could not be worse, we still pursued our course, and a little in the evening discovered a fog arising on our right. This I knew must proceed from low wet ground, or from a pond. Our horses seemed anxious and impatient, we gave them the reins, and in the space of half an hour they brought us on the margin of a small creek, into which they plunged and satisfied their thirst, as we did also our own.

We here saw fresh Indian signs; a deer having been dressed on the opposite side of the creek, gave us the strongest suspicion. We thought it prudent to keep watch during the night, as we dreaded the clandestine visits of savages more than that of the wolves the preceding night. We made but a small fire, and kept our horses near us. During the night I heard the distant echo of an Indian voice, after which all was silent till daylight.

On the 12th we had a cold and tedious storm from the southwest. It rained violently, but I had now become hardened and capable of any fatigue, either from suffering by disappointment, bodily labour, or exposure to the changing seasons and nightly dews—to all, my constitution had become inured.

We had now come to an old Indian camp; some of the huts were still remaining. The heavy rains compelled us to stop here: we found a plenty of Spanish moss

Edom expressed a desire to go out and try his skill in shooting for game: to this I consented, as we were nearly out of provision, having none of the bread kind left. Edom returned a little after sunset, with a rackoon and large tortoise, which he had taken near a swamp. These we dressed and dried.

Jan. 15th. We crossed a considerable stream running a northeasterly course, which I supposed to be one of the branches of the Red river. Here we were detained for some time in making a small wicker raft, in which we took our equipage safe across, and then returned and swam our horses over. This stream is about fifty yards wide, and runs very rapidly, its course being much broken by rocks, and is very deep.

Continuing our course west southwest until the 20th of January, the mountains began to appear conspicuous, gently raising their blue summits one above another until met by the sky. Game, (which was our only dependence for subsistence,) we found not to be so plenty as we had before.

Our prospects were truly pleasing in going over these ridges, especially as we surmounted the last one towards the west that we could observe. On this, one could perceive by turning round, a sugar loaf peak; a naked summit of rocks, with falling cascades; an extensive priarie; a wild forest; pleasant vallies—and in short, every thing romantic, sublime, wild, and solitary.

During our painful tour over these hills we killed a bear, catamount, and wild hog; though deer, buffalo, and the like, are seldom seen. Through these ridges are vast

Here my compass refused to obey its polarity, and gave way on every side as attraction excited.

We had on the last of this month reached the last eminence. The thermometer stood at 63° 25′ at 12 o'clock. Immediately on our course I discovered an extensive opening, and on a nearer ken with my glass, I found it to be a priarie, and could distinguish cattle in abundance feeding upon the plains. We pursued our course, and in the evening found to our great pleasure a settlement of Spanish and Indians. There were but few houses, and those much scattered. Our appearance being somewhat singular, gave a sudden surprise to an Indian belonging to a house we first rode up to; but making myself known as well as I could, I was immediately conducted to a Spaniard's house. I was truly glad to see him, and he as much astonished to see a regular traveller through this country. I alighted, and after giving him a short detail of my journey he insisted on our staying with them a few days to recruit our horses, and rest ourselves, to which I most willingly consented. Our horses were turned out at large with theirs on the priaries. The kind host regaled us with a good supper, or good for a wilderness country; it consisted of ash cake, venison, and bear's meat, besides coffee. I never ate with more satisfaction.

Next morning and a part of the day were spent in conversation, in which he related to me his proceedings, and the cause of his settling in so remote a part of the country. His narrative was as follows:

That himself and the others that came with him had been brought thither, or near the place in which he now lived; that his father, with several others, had escaped the convulsions in 1770, in which the famous city of Guatimala was destroyed; that a few families lived on a

mountain situated about nine miles east of the vale in which the principal town stood, employed in the business of cutting timber. For several days previous to that dreadful event, (as he had been informed by his father,) there was something in the appearance of nature that boded nothing good: a sullen stillness prevailed; the air seemed to be in a state of stagnation; the animal creation was in awful distress; some fowls were thrown into convulsions; the sun was scarcely visible, and nature seemed to have changed its appearance, and, lulled to sleep, to be resting on the brink of destruction. On the 20th of June, about ten o'clock, the air seemed to be filled with dusty fragments; fowls of every description huddled in flocks together, and the beasts howled with horror. An awful din commenced that rumbled along the vale, and was succeeded by repeated shocks: trees, hills, houses, man, and beast, could no longer maintain an erect posture, but fell prostrate, confessing their weakness by repeated cries for mercy. Ancient and modern history fall far short of an instance so terrible, rendered more so by having a warning, and the harbinger of desolation presented in every object. A dismal roll swept along the chaos, and suddenly the atmosphere was changed, apparently in the horizon towards the city; alas! the city was no more, its ruins floated in the air: the third shock, with a dreadful crash, terminated the existence of Guatimala. Our mountain was in an awful suspense, vibrating, shaking its basis, and opening large cavities on its surface. The night was dark and solemnly still, excepting the intervals of a dreadful roar. The earth seemed to be pained with convulsions for several days together, and for

had settled several times, and were disturbed by the Indians: at length, after many painful years, they had arrived where they now were, near a tribe of Indians called the Parathees, who inhabit a fine tract of country on both sides of a considerable stream of water. Their land was fertile, and they were likely to live in peace and plenty. They all had Indian wives except one, whose wife had died in consequence of the excessive fatigue they endured for several years together in a wilderness country. They had some land cleared which bore corn in great plenty, and had formed a resolution to remain here for life. They have many horses, which they use in hunting the elk. During my stay the weather proved very rainy, and the travelling would have been very tedious. I here procured some wine of a pleasant taste, made by them from an excellent grape. They had a species of the cocoa-nut which afforded much flavour, though not to be compared with those of the southern islands for size nor taste.

The climate of this country is not surpassed by that of any on the continent, either for mildness, or heat; and on the elevated situation of high mountains the snow lies during the year. The maritime places are extremely hot; owing to their low situation, all vapours of heat driven from colder regions settle here, and render the summer season quite unpleasant. But in latitudes from 29 to 40° north, the climate is pleasant and delightful, being fanned by cooling breezes, which waft along the atmosphere, and salute every pleasant vale and ascent with the blessing of peace and harmony, quiet from cultivation, and enjoying the sublime sweets of a natural state.

We have to regret that a set of arbitrary beings have

cipal boast: they indulge in indolence and dissipation, being supported by their rich mines of gold and silver. Though sunk in ignorance and superstition, they boast of their abilities, and in many instances rank themselves with a superior class of beings. Their ideas are led to an extravagant height by their being so particularly favoured by their gods in being thus situated in a land of riches, while the neighbouring countries are in a state of ignorance respecting their vast wealth, supposing them not even to enjoy happiness without a mine of gold at their very doors. Mistaken people, you are sunk in oblivion, and do not even enjoy the social benefits of society and friendship amongst mankind; you have wealth, but you do not know how to enjoy it; you have the finest country in the world, but you will not cultivate it; you have noble streams of water, but they envy your weight on their bosom, and only rejoice to bear your riches to enlightened kingdoms, where it is distributed for the use of mankind. If you would open your hearts and hands to a free intercourse, and live as Christians ought to live, you might enjoy happiness; if you would distribute your gold for ample returns of merchandize, you might live respected, and be no more perplexed with envious people, who court you for your treasures, while they despise you for your principles.

## CHAP. IX.

*The author leaves the settlement and proceeds on his journey—Useful directions received from the settlers—Difficulties in crossing the river Gagundo—Alligators—Beauty and grandeur of the forests—Imminent danger of the author—Dangerous night from the wild beasts—Meet a tribe of Indians—Misconduct of my negro—His distress and sorrow—Description of the Badies—Author goes on a beaver hunt—His perilous situation—Arrival at the camp of the chief of the Badies—Determination of the chief to keep my negro—Distress of my negro—General remarks on the nature of the savages—Obtain my negro's liberty by a singular expedient.*

About the 10th of February we again started, having exchanged horses with the settlers, and provided good saddles, and taking as much provision as we could conveniently carry, with the rest of our load. Our horses travelled free. I got directions for the best and nearest way towards the city of Mexico, which place I was determined to visit. Our course was to be west for about 200 miles, then southwest until we reached a large cluster of mountains; we were then to steer south, in which course we should find the Spanish settlements. At the same time we were warned of the dangers to which we

from inundations in the spring season, than from the inhabitants.

For several days we proceeded without much interruption, except that of crossing some large creeks, which were not fordable; but when we came to a rapid river, called the Gagundo, we were much perplexed in finding means to cross it, and in the attempt, my negro's horse and part of our provisions were lost. The stream was about 300 yards wide, and ran more rapid than I imagined. We procured several sticks of timber of a proper size, of which we made a raft; but on getting our things on board and shoving off, we were carried down with such velocity that it was impossible to set across, although we could easily reach bottom with our poles, the water being only about six feet deep. We got about half way across, and found it unsafe to proceed, on account of some rocks we discovered below, against which we were in danger of being carried by the rapidity of the current. We just passed the breakers, and were glad to come on shore on the same side from whence we started, about half a mile below. I then sent Edom up for one of the horses, and having put our provision on his back, we returned to our first fording place. Chagrined with this useless labour, I determined to swim the horses across: I took all my ammunition, and articles it was necessary to keep dry, and bound them to my head and shoulders, and entered, directing my negro to remain till I should get safe over, and then to follow. In crossing, my horse had many struggles, sometimes touching bottom, and sometimes falling into deep channels; but at length I got safe across. I now beckoned for Edom, who had with him our provision. After he had got within about an hundred yards of me, his horse stumbled and fell in

his side, with Edom, provision, and all: Edom soon recovered himself, and caught a part of the provision; but the horse, getting his feet entangled in the bridle, was unable to recover, and soon drowned. After struggling for some time, my poor negro got safe ashore, much troubled for the loss of his horse. I comforted him by saying it was a rough passage and dangerous undertaking, and told him I had rather lose both the horses than my rifle, which he had saved; in fact, I was well pleased it was no worse.

We here encamped, having spent the greatest part of the day in making a raft and crossing. We dried those things that were wet, looking well to the rifle, and cleaning and loading it. My poor negro seemed much disheartened, expecting he should have to ponder his way through the wilderness on foot. During this night I saw a glimmer of light some distance down the stream, and could not imagine what it might be; however, the next day our curiosity was gratified, for by altering our course in order to escape a pond of water, and travelling some distance down the river, we beheld the same tree we had set on fire the preceding day at 9 o'clock, being not more than 700 yards from the river, on the opposite side. We had now got quite round this pond on the northeast side. The sun shone very warm, and numerous alligators were seen; some of them were of a large size and length; they lay basking in the sun, and seemed not to move at our approach. Our horses were very shy, not being habituated to them. The smell

if they were lifeless until a sufficient quantity of insects, bugs, and the like, are collected within their peaceful jaws; then suddenly dropping the jaw, they enclose their prey and swallow them whole. The great strength of their nature enables them to digest even poison. The younger ones are often destroyed by the catamount, and other beasts of prey; many are likewise devoured by the larger alligators, and thus nature has provided a way to destroy these dangerous beasts, and keep their number down, which would otherwise render the country uninhabitable.

We this day pursued our journey, and the weather proved mild. At 12 o'clock we were in front of an uncommonly large growth of timber, at the entrance of which we encamped for the remainder of the day and night, in order to procure some provisions. Finding plenty of provender for our horse, we let him run at large, putting a bell on his neck.

I took my rifle and entered the shady recesses of the forest. The sycamore, the buck-eye, the oak, the hickory, and the chesnut, rose in beauty and magnificence. An uncommonly large sycamore excited my curiosity, which, on surveying, I found to be sixty-nine feet in circumference, making its diameter nearly twenty-three feet. Although this may appear incredible, I have been informed that they are sometimes found much larger.

I had proceeded some distance in this beautiful wood, when I discovered a small growth of hickories on a little rise of ground, which appeared alive with something;

the leaves at some distance from me. Hardly knowing which way to turn myself, or what to shoot at, I stood motionless by the side of a chesnut tree, when I saw a large buck walking up with much assurance towards the place where I stood. He approached within ten rods of me, when I let fly at him, and had the mortification to see him fall only half dead. He soon recovered, and, springing upon his feet, bounded off a few paces. I stepped out to reload, by which means I was discovered; when, racking with pain, and with rage sparkling in his eyes, he sprang towards me: I had the ball about half way down, and the ramrod still in my rifle; in this situation I cocked, and had just time to raise and fire off my piece, before he reached me: the ramrod and ball entered his breast, and brought him to the ground, as well as myself; for the sudden passage of the fire being stopped when it reached the ball, which was extremely tight, produced such a shock that I fell, and knew not for some time whether the fall was occasioned by my gun or the beast. However, on my recovering I found him just breathing his last. The echoing report of two guns in so short a time, soon brought my faithful negro with both the pistols, he supposing that I was engaged with Indians.

We lugged the game to our encampment, and cooked some of it: this brought us in a dreadful situation, for we were now surrounded with wolves, eager for their prey, and I repented having let at large my faithful horse. I kindled a large fire and gathered a quantity of fuel, and soon my horse came trotting up, and frisking with pleasure, as if safe with us, and near a fire. This

fuel before daylight appeared. I was under the necessity of lavishing out my little stock of provisions. The deer which I had killed I cut up in small pieces, and at the near approach of the wolves, would heave it to them; this seemed to satisfy them but for a few moments; I then threw fire brands at them, which seemed only to increase their rage, while it extinguished my fire. I now made two large fires, which had a good effect; several still kept round us, but approached no nearer than the circle of light which shone with brilliancy from our fire.

Next morning we again packed up, and started forward. This day's travel was rendered very tedious by reason of a large tract of swampy land. Having got quite through the swamp we fell into a small trace of a foot path, which unexpectedly came in our way, and created within me some suspicion that we were in the neighbourhood of savages; I determined however to keep the path. We encamped a little after dark. Soon after, my negro, who had been gathering fuel, hastily returned, informing me that at no great distance he saw a fire, and that he also saw several men standing around it. I went to the spot from whence he had seen them, and soon found that they were savages. I now knew not whether to go to them, or to remain where I was; but concluding that they would see our fire, and might steal a march upon us and plunder us, and then make their escape in the woods, and on the other hand that if I went boldly up to them I might be well received, I resolved to go directly to them.

that they might hear it; this alarmed them, and several sprang upon their feet who had been laying down, and whom I had not seen before; they were looking and peaking in every direction. I still continued my conversation with my negro, at the same time moving towards them. My negro, being on foot, kept close to my side. At length they got sight of my horse, which was white. They began jabbering, and I could hear them pronounce in a broken voice, Spaniard. I rode quite up to the fire, and the little pappooses ran behind their mothers. After dismounting, I presented my hand, which they all took in rotation; but they seemed rather shy of my jet black negro, who offered his hand; they were cautious, and would hardly touch it. I made them to understand that I was their brother, by laying my hand on my left breast. I made them understand by signs that my horse was hungry, and one or two of the squaws were immediately sent away; they soon returned, bringing with them some young corn and Spanish moss, which my horse ate very well. They presented us with some fruit not unlike our crab-apple in appearance, but which had the taste of a raspberry. I took out some of my venison and began to eat, and discovering by their actions that they had got none, I equally divided my little store among them; with this they seemed much pleased.

I spake a few words in Spanish, and was answered by a very old man, who spoke so distinctly that it rendered our conversation quite easy. He made strict enquiry respecting the course I had come, and whither I was going. I answered all his questions with as much ease as possi-

other, then at me, and then at my horse: I immediately added, that I was bound to Mexico to see my friends. We were treated with coldness during the night. They invited us to lay down with them by their fire: we accepted the invitation, and my negro slept well, having had but little rest the night before, on account of the wolves. About four o'clock in the morning I awaked Edom, and after bidding him not to close his eyes again, soon fell asleep, and did not awake until I heard my horse trotting by me: I sprang up, and found a young Indian on the horse, and his father leading him, who made signs that he only wanted to amuse his boy. I found Edom asleep; but the past fatigues having worn him down, I let him remain. He awaked about sunrise, and instantly remembering my caution, begged pardon for his offence. The horse being out of sight, and some of the Indians having gone, knowing the whole of the proceedings, I very coolly asked him where my horse was, pretending I had just awoke. In an instant his eye was on every side, but no horse could he discover. I had laid my rifle and ammunition under some skins, and asked him where my rifle was, affecting a look of despair. The poor negro fell on the ground and begged me to kill him, at the same time adding, that if I would spare his life he would never sleep again on such an occasion. He being my only friend, and knowing his honesty, and that excessive fatigue had been the occasion of his present misconduct, I pardoned him, but not without telling him

that their nation was very powerful; that they had been sent hither for the purpose of hunting, and had that day arrived; that their brethren lived about two days journey towards the setting sun; that their chief was a very big man, and a great warrior.

I found their principal weapons to be bows and arrows, the arrows pointed with copper: they have also spears pointed with deer's horn, which are about ten feet long; these they throw in the manner of a javelin. They have but few knives, which they use principally in dressing their game. These people are very fond of music and dancing. Their principal way of hunting is by ensnaring their game, in which they are very artful: not only the men, but the women have various ways by which they entice them, sometimes in pens built for that purpose, which are made of cane entwined together.

We had been with them for some time, and saw many of their manœuvres, which had no other effect than to give us a proper idea of Indian manners. Their dexterity on foot is very surprising.

One morning they brought with them to the camp a number of skins, and amongst the rest some beavers: it was now my determination to visit the pond or lake, in which they said they caught them. Next morning I started, leaving my negro behind, with the goods and horse. I was during the day impressed with a strong idea that all was not right at the camp. We killed some deer and beavers, and at about ten o'clock in the evening returned; but alas! I missed my faithful negro. I

was pacified by having an arrow pointed at my breast: I cocked my gun, which greatly terrified the poor fellow that was about letting loose at me. I was told, however, that it was useless to resist, as I should be overpowered by numbers, and that the next day I was to accompany them to their chief, who was about two days' journey off. I at first refused to go; but when they informed me that my negro and horse had gone thither, I consented. The next morning we set out, and in about an hour came to a considerable stream, where the savages had bark canoes; in these we descended the river until about sunset, when we came to an encampment of several Indians and squaws, who had also been on the business of hunting. The Indians had much conversation together, occasionally looking at me, and then continuing their conversation with repeated shouts of victory. Judge of my feelings in the situation in which I then was; they had taken from me my gun and pistols, and had tied my hands behind me: in this situation I next morning began to descend the river. One of the Indians was shockingly mangled by means of one of my pistols, with which he was playing: while looking very earnestly at the bore of the pistol, and playing with his fingers about the trigger, being cocked, it went off, and its contents tore away his left cheek, and shockingly mangled his face. At this, he immediately threw the pistol into the river, and fainted away. I was in hopes it had killed him, or wounded him mortally, at the same time fearing lest I should be held accountable for the deed; but they must know me to be innocent, as I was sitting in the boat with my hands tied behind me.

At the report of the pistol [illegible]

canoes; but on examination they found he had committed the act with his own hands. An old man then took my rifle and the other pistol in his boat, and left an ugly squaw to row my boat and nurse the wounded man. I sat in a very restless state, expecting to undergo some torture for the accident which had happened.

In the afterpart of the day I found this stream opened into a kind of lake. An island appeared in the centre, surrounded by water of no great width. The sun was just setting, and all nature had a mournful appearance. I saw a smoke at a distance through the opening, and on the island and shores I discovered a crowd of people, eager to see a white man.

For near two hours were these two parties yelling, being answered by each other, and keeping up a continual noise. Having got within a quarter of a mile of the party on shore, I saw my white horse standing in the midst of a multitude of savages.

At length we reached the shore, and I was untied and led before the big man; in reality he was large enough for a giant: I judged him to be at least seven feet two inches in height, and he was suitably proportioned. He gave shrieks of joy at having such strange looking animals as myself and negro in his power; but when the wounded man that had shot himself was brought before him, I could compare his yells to nothing else than broken thunder. The man that was shot proved to be his brother's son; the cause was explained to him, and he was reconciled towards me.

On my first landing I saw my negro tied fast to a tree, and he began to cry horribly, his sighs rending the air.

did without hesitation; but soon returned with an answer that the chief had taken a particular liking to him, and he privately informed me that it would be difficult for me to get him away. The idea of losing my faithful negro created a sudden anxiety, which was soon turned to depression of spirit.

I was now stripped and searched, having all my clothes, my shirt excepted, taken off: fortunately they missed my little fortune, which I had concealed in a band around me, it being in gold. They gave me my clothes and returned to me my horse, the chief at the same time telling me I was at liberty: they also restored to me my gun and other equipments, the lost pistol excepted. I asked if my black man was also at liberty, but was answered in the negative. I then asked them if I could remain in their nation long enough to procure some provision, and recruit my horse: they told me that was repugnant to the chief's wishes; however they consented, making me promise not to have any communication with the black man, whom the chief boldly said he meant to keep. I had now nothing to do but wait with as much patience as possible, hoping that by some means I should be able to rescue my Edom from a life of wretchedness and misery among savages, who would perhaps treat him with contempt, and keep him in slavery. But I was informed that they thought him far superior to white men, in consequence of his being black: they supposed him to be made of a superior quality of clay, and that the red clay men ranked next; but the white men they thought were

were first made. The white men, they said, had polluted themselves, and their learning had been a great evil amongst all nations and kindreds of people. They believed that the red men would yet be blessed with all the good stores of nature, and have dominion over all the country, and that the slaves would be all set at liberty. I soon grew weary of this conversation.

My poor negro, by some means, got information of their proceedings, and was almost mad with rage and despair: the dreadful apprehension of being again in slavery, caused him to vent his anguish and threats against the savages, which provoked them to such a degree that a council was held concerning him. He was yet confined, and by an interpreter he was informed, that if he would stay with them and marry a squaw, he should be happy; at the same time he was given to understand, that in case of a refusal, he would be tortured to death. He firmly refused a compliance, and another council was held, by which it was determined to try the effect of torture. No one could describe the anguish that filled my breast, on seeing my faithful Edom led out by this big monster, the chief, to have his fortitude tried. Having led him to the appointed place, they stripped him naked and tied him to a tree; they then sheared off his wool close to his head, and the infernal torture then began by throwing hot embers on his bare skull, notwithstanding his lamentations and my entreaties: they also threatened me with condign punishment if I said any thing more in his behalf. In

live with them and serve them. His head was sorely scorched by these infernal monsters.

I now began to lose all hopes of regaining his liberty, and concluded to pursue my journey alone, but not without regret. These Indians are a cruel race of people, whose only wish is to gratify their own desires: their hearts are unfeeling towards the wretched victims who have the misfortune to be placed within the reach of their power. A few days passed on in anxious suspense, when by a kind providence it was removed by critical means, and such as would cause a feeling heart to shudder.

We had been with them about seven days; the man who had wounded himself with my pistol began to recover, and they were fitting out another hunting party; at the same time I was making preparations to go, and my poor negro overwhelmed at the idea of parting, and being left in a place so wretched and forlorn. My gun having been charged some time, I drew off the load and put in fresh powder. While this was doing I found they were holding a council, and seemed very much agitated; at length, to my no little surprise I found myself surrounded, and was quickly disarmed, and at the same instant was informed that unless I would agree to one proposal, they would never let me go out of the nation. After being so cruelly treated, what heart could endure their hellish provocations, and thus tormenting one or two who had fallen into their power; I quickly demanded of them to pronounce the proposal. They told me all strife was useless, and that the proposal was to have a turtle's egg

head. By this expedient I obtained my liberty, together with that of my negro; for, taking it for granted that I should kill him, they readily consented to my proposal. They tied Edom to a tree, and measured off twenty steps; but thinking this not far enough, they measured ten more. From this distance I was directed to fire, all things being in readiness; my enervated hands began to tremble, and I was uncertain whether I should accomplish my design or not. My negro requested me not to be affected, and said that if I should be so unfortunate as to shoot too low, it would be a satisfaction to be put out of his miserable existence by me, rather than by those hideous monsters, who stood ready with their bows and arrows to despatch me, if I refused to comply. The egg was about the size of a goose egg, but rather longer. Thus the poor fellow stood at the distance of thirty paces from me, an object of savage barbarity. I once raised the instrument of death, but my hands trembled and I let it drop; again, and again I raised it, in order to decide. The victim stood in awful suspense, awaiting the crisis which should set him at liberty, or take him out of existence. At length, summoning up all my courage, I levelled my rifle with as much deliberation and exactness as possible, and as a wise providence would have it, cut the egg on the lower side, taking the skin off his poor scorched head. With an exultation which nothing but preservation from the worst of deaths could have excited, he cried out, God bless you master; and at the same time the natives stood speechless with amazement, and seemed to feel sensible

having obtained a general description of their nation. What most excited my astonishment was the extravagant size and great strength of the chief. All his people fear him, for being arbitrary in his laws, he would frequently put to death with his own hands, criminals who were falsely accused, without judge or jury.

---

## CHAP. X.

*Joy of Edom at his escape from the savages—Salt springs—Benefit resulting to the United States from the manufacture of salt—Author kills a large snake—Description of it—Violent storm—Tracks of Indians—Indian hunting camp—Author loses his rifle—Fruitless endeavours to obtain it—Sets out to visit the Indian town.*

My poor negro was overwhelmed with gratitude, at his unexpected liberation from a nation of such ferocious wretches; indeed the fellow had taken such a liking to me, that he preferred death to a separation. We immediately commenced our journey, and I had abundant cause to be thankful that nothing worse had happened. I had lost some few articles, but the bulk of my property was still safe.

After pursuing our journey for about four miles, we

bushels of salt might be made from these springs in one week; and when we consider the high price it bears at market, averaging from 90 to 100 cents per bushel, it would surely be an object of vast importance to the United States, and well worthy the attention of men of enterprize, to engage in the manufacture of an article which is in such general demand.

The maritime part of the United States will, undoubtedly, procure their salt from the Islands, and other places from whence they have been in the habit of receiving it; but a large proportion of our inland country, say two thirds of the United States, might be supplied from the interior, and that too with salt of a superior quality, and on more reasonable terms than it can be had elsewhere; a capital of six or eight thousand dollars would be sufficient, and the country is so abundant that it furnishes all the necessaries and many of the luxuries of life, almost spontaneously.

We proceeded but slowly along, owing to the extreme weakness of my negro, whose head, and many other parts of his body were very sore and painful; he however refused to lie by entirely. We encamped this night near a small rivulet which was plentifully surrounded with thick long grass, which was very serviceable, not only as food for our horse, but as a pleasant bed; the wild beasts were not so troublesome as formerly, and we slept soundly until the shrill and pleasant notes of the birds awaked us from our slumber. We immediately arose, and after taking a slight breakfast, again pursued our journey.

species of snake I had not before seen attracted my attention, and caused me to take particular notice of it. It darted with rapidity from tree to tree, and seemed to be of an enormous size. I ordered Edom to walk behind the horse, and to carry my pistol and a long pole which I used as a spear, whilst I continued on the horse and watched the monster with my rifle, ready to bring him down. In a few minutes he attempted to ascend a magnolia, whose trunk being clear of branches, I had a fair opportunity to shoot him. I fired, and brought him to the ground: my negro advanced, and perceiving him still alive, dispatched him with his spear. The ball entered his neck, and passed entirely through him. It was the largest snake I ever saw, measuring thirty-eight feet in length. This snake is called by Mr. Pernaut the large spotted snake, very likely from the number of small spots on his body. I took the skin off and preserved it: it was of a dusky white colour, the back interspersed with twenty-four large pale irregular spots, and the other parts of the body with an infinite number of smaller ones; the tail is of a dark colour, and the sides are variegated with different colours. The head is covered with small scales, and has a broad belt back of the eyes. It wants the large dog fangs, of course its bite is not poisonous. The tongue is fleshy and forked. Above the eyes, on each side, the head rises high. The scales of this snake were all very small, roundish, and smooth: the tail does not

The following is the manner in which this animal procures its food: When impelled by hunger, it frequents caves and thickets, from which places it suddenly darts upon travellers, beasts, &c. When it chooses a tree for its watching place, it supports itself by winding its tail around the trunk, or a branch, and darts with rapidity upon tigers, wolves, and any animal that comes within its reach. When it lays hold of animals, especially any of the larger kinds, it twists itself several times around their body, and by the vast force of its muscles bruises and breaks all their bones.

The manner in which it prepares its prey for eating is truly singular, and deserves to be mentioned: I had an opportunity to notice it while on a hunting party, some time after this, with the Indians. It first lays it under the shade of some tree which it can ascend in case of danger; it then begins by licking it all over, its tongue being furnished with a peculiar kind of saliva common to these snakes; this it does for the purpose of facilitating deglutition: if it be a stag or any other large animal, it begins by sucking the feet, and gradually sucks in the body, and last of all the head. When the animal happens to have large horns, the natives assert that they have been known to go about a long time with the horns sticking out of their mouth, which, as the animal putrifies, fall off.

After this animal has swallowed a stag or a tiger, it is unable to move for some days; and the natives, being well acquainted with this circumstance, always take this op-

skin which I took, on my return I presented to Dr. De Fludcar, who was much pleased to add it to his already extensive collection of natural curiosities.

After travelling about twelve miles through this thick and almost impenetrable forest, we arrived where it became more clear, and were enabled to make greater progress. We encamped by the side of a spring, after having travelled eighteen miles.

The next morning the weather appeared unsettled, and as my water kegs wanted repairing, and some other things of importance were to be settled, I thought it best to remain where we were. I sent Edom to collect some wood; while I arranged my papers, and secured such things as were of importance, in case I should be attacked. I had hitherto steered a southwest course, as nearly as possible, but now resolved to steer more westerly, as I had understood there were two tribes of Indians who were friendly, one of which in their manners and dialect resembled in some manner the ancient Welch. As this was a subject which agitated the learned, I felt anxious to ascertain the truth of it, and make such discoveries as were in my power.

About noon it bagan to rain most violently, accompanied with thunder and lightning. My negro now returned, bringing such wood as was necessary, and we immediately set about securing our things from the storm; a small grove of trees was selected, and our awning was accordingly spread, affording us a safe shelter from the rain. Night now set in, and it rained with as

shook the surrounding hills. My mind was settled and tranquil, and I viewed the surrounding scenery with calmness; I felt that I was entirely dependent on the power of a BEING who had declared that he loved mercy, and would protect the wandering fugitive; I relied with implicit confidence on his word, and slept composedly during the latter part of the night.

March 12. In the morning I awoke; all nature seemed refreshed, the birds sung with sweetest melody, the grove appeared dressed in a more lively green, and I could not help lifting my heart in thankfulness to Him who gives rain, seedtime, and harvest, and who feeds the birds of the air and the beasts of the field. After finding my horse, who had strayed some distance from the tent, we packed up and proceeded on our journey.

We had travelled about six miles, when we came to an opening. I plainly perceived there had been some one recently there, and felt perplexed, for, according to my information, we were more than forty miles from any Indians. If they were of those two tribes which had been described to me, I had nothing to fear; but if, on the other hand, they were hostile Indians, and should treat us in the manner we were last, I thought it would be better for us to avoid them. Another thing, I did not wish to be detained, as the season was fast approaching when it would be highly improper to travel, owing to the extreme heat. I however proceeded with caution, and found the country become more clear, and the travelling excellent;

have sentinels placed out, who on the least appearance of danger give the alarm, and they all fly off with incredible speed.

These prairies, which I have had occasion to mention several times, are natural meadows which abound in this country, and are generally covered with a rich luxuriant grass, which is sometimes three or four feet in height; the land is extremely rich and fertile, and capable of producing any thing. These prairies feed innumerable herds of buffalo, who roam without restraint, and on the least appearance of danger fly off for the mountains: their speed is very great, it being impossible for the swiftest horse to overtake them.

After striking off from this prairie and pursuing my route along the margin of the wood, I found a large quantity of marine shells, which were incorporated with the soil of the bank: the soil was a blue clay, intermixed with small stones. I preserved a number of the shells, as there was no water near, nor any appearance of there having been any.

About dark we encamped by the side of a small stream, whose borders were clothed with grass, and afforded good grazing for our horse. Here had recently been fires, and I suspected we were not far from the haunts of Indians. Accordingly I prepared myself, cleaned my rifle and pistol, cast some balls, and took out a fresh supply of ammunition. We had in the course of the day killed a small animal resembling a ground hog, on which we supped, and found it very good meat.

Towards morning it grew cold and unpleasant, but when the sun arose it became mild. After breakfasting on

miles when we struck an Indian path, and I was certain from other appearances that we were not far from a settlement; I accordingly slackened my pace, in order to have an opportunity of observing the different paths, and of being prepared for the approach of the natives. About two miles we ascended a hill, and I plainly perceived about twenty wigwams; in a few minutes more, an Indian, who had been after wood, came close alongside, without at first perceiving me; the instant he discovered me he dropped his wood, and fled with precipitation. I felt chagrined to see him make off so fast, and endeavoured by every means in my power to induce him to come back, but in vain; he was out of sight in an instant. I had not the least doubt he would make such a report to his nation as would alarm their fears, and cause them to receive us with coldness; nor was I much mistaken, for on coming within about a quarter of a mile of the village, I saw them drawn up in battle array, armed with bows, arrows, clubs, and slings.

I now dismounted from my horse, and advanced alone, telling Edom to remain behind, and in case he saw any violence offered to me, to come up and endeavour to assist me. I had my rifle in my hand, but in such a manner as could not excite their fears; when I came within about an hundred yards of them, I stopped, held out my hand, and addressed them in the Spanish language; at this they all seemed to confer one with another, and soon one of them, whom I judged from his appearance was the chief, advanced a few steps and laid down his

dressed myself to the chief, telling him from whence I came, and demanding my gun, which I told him was all I had to procure victuals with. He seemed to pay no attention to what I said, but laughed immoderately, often patting me on the cheek, and showing signs of great satisfaction.

During this time, Edom, who had been an unobserved spectator of the scene, advanced with an intention of affording me assistance if possible, when a sudden scream from the squaws proved that he was noticed. All was now confusion; the chief forcibly drew me in the rear of the Indians, who had resumed their arms, and were waiting the approach of my negro. Edom, finding himself discovered, advanced with firmness, and coming in front of the Indians, took off his cap, and after making a low bow, began dancing a Guinea dance. I felt alarmed, and feared it would cause them to commit some violence: I was however mistaken; they all fell a laughing, and the old chief advanced and took him by the hand, seeming to be highly pleased with him.

I now went up to the chief, and requested him to give me my gun: he told me it was out of his power, he being not the head of the tribe, and that I must accompany him to their town, where the head chief was, who would return it, if it could be found: this was what I was afraid of, that the Indian who had my gun would absent himself, and that by this means I should lose it. I found it impossible to obtain it by any other means, and complied. The old man now conducted me to his wigwam, where I found his wife and two of his daughters: he informed me that they were on a hunting party, and should return the next

ters, who indulged their curiosity by examining him very particularly; and the exclamation *Tee, tee*, which fell from both of them, proved that they were well pleased with him.

During the evening we were amused with dancing, which lasted till a late hour, and was joined in by both sexes. The music was performed on a simple instrument, made of cane, having a hole in the middle, into which the musician blew, and produced not a disagreeable sound.

## CHAP. XI.

*The author arrives at the town of the Yorotees—Friendly reception—Restoration of my rifle—Author requested to afford assistance in a war—Reasons for so doing—Preparations—Weapons of the Yorotees—War council—War song—Dance—Commence our journey.*

In the morning the chief awaked me, and the natives proceeded to collect their materials for moving towards the town. About noon we started, and travelled through a fertile country, abounding in venerable trees, which reared their heads in majestic grandeur to the skies. Small rivulets interspersed the pleasant vallies, and at once gave beauty and animation to the scene. We travelled about fifteen miles, when we came to a thick swamp, through which we found an Indian path that led us about

little group, who had all been out some time, and were in want of many necessary articles.

On our arrival, the chief, with all the women and others of the tribe, came out to meet us, and seemed much pleased at the return of their friends. I was presented to the chief, who received me with kindness, and spake a few words to me; but finding I did not understand him, he conversed with me by signs, and seemed highly pleased with the answers I gave him respecting the countries I had passed through, the manners of the people, &c. He told me he had been in nineteen battles; that he once went a great way off to fight the whites, but the rain prevented him from giving them battle. He showed me nineteen scars, and told me he had two sons killed in a war with a great nation in the west.

I now stated to the chief the loss I had sustained of my gun, and requested him to cause it to be returned to me. He immediately replied, that if any of his people had done so they should be punished, and directed me to follow him. When we came to the square, (a large space found in the centre of almost all Indian towns,) I was directed to stand still: he then ordered some of the inferior chiefs who attended him to go and collect the men. In a few minutes the sound of shells was heard in every quarter. I began to grow alarmed for my safety, and the old man, perceiving me to look grave, demanded the reason, assuring me I had nothing to fear, as this was a customary thing when they assembled a council.

In a few minutes all the natives of the village were as-

ground. When he had finished speaking, a profound silence reigned throughout the assembly, till at length one advanced and spake a few words to the chief, who answered him with mildness; he went away, and not a syllable was spoken during his absence, which was, as near as I could judge, about twenty minutes. At last he returned, bearing in his hand my gun, which had been taken to pieces. I felt concerned lest he had broken it, but I soon saw that it had been taken apart by slipping off the iron rings; he advanced to the chief and laid the gun at his feet. The old man now looked at him with sternness, and after addressing him for about twenty minutes, directed two or three to bind him. I now understood he was to be punished, and advancing to the chief, I kneeled, and implored him by signs to forgive the offender. He seemed surprised, and was ready to refuse me; but I entreated with earnestness, and he at length consented to pardon him. The moment his pardon was pronounced, the natives all set up a shout, and came towards me, taking my hand, and expressing signs of joy and thankfulness, assuring me I should be among them as a brother, so long as I thought proper to stay.

Upon receiving my rifle, I made the old man a present of some pictures I had drawn, representing a horse, Indians, hogs, &c. together with a large string of beads, and a small belt, with which he seemed highly pleased; he in return gave me a pair of mockasins, curiously trimmed with wampum.

The chief informed me that they were going to war with a neighbouring nation, which was considered very

let Edom go and carry my musket, which would strike terror and dismay into the hearts of their enemies. I immediately told the chief, that not only my black man, but myself also would go with them, and would do all in our power to relieve them from their difficulties; at this they were overjoyed, and endeavoured to express their gratitude by a thousand different jestures.

They immediately set about preparing for their intended campaign. I found them to be about two thousand strong, all of them armed with bows and arrows, spears and slings. The arrows were about six feet in length, pointed at the head with bone, and made very smooth; they were dipped in a poisonous kind of liquor, which they said no remedy among them could remove. Their spears were twelve feet long, made of ash, straight, and very highly polished; these they threw to an astonishing distance, and rarely ever missed their object. Their slings were made of the fibres of the sycamore tree twisted, with which they would send stones the distance of two hundred yards, and with surprising swiftness. On the whole, when they are equipped their appearance is far from being contemptible.

I now cleaned my rifle and pistol, set Edom to cast some balls, and made other preparations for the ensuing campaign. They intended starting the next new moon, which would be in three days. My principal object in taking this tour with the Indians, was to have a view of the country, and ascertain whether there were any mines or other valuables.

On the evening of the day preceding their march, all

square, and were soon followed by all the young men and women in the village, who took their seats at a respectful distance from the old men; next came the boys and girls, from twelve to eight years old, and lastly the old women, who ranged themselves in an exact circle on the outside.

The old chief arose and harangued them for some time, (as I afterwards understood,) on the injuries and aggressions which they had received from their enemies, who had destroyed their hunting, waylaid their women and children, and called them cowards. He was succeeded by the next oldest, who recounted the bravery of their fathers, and the many battles they had won from those with whom they were going to contend; then telling them if they were now defeated, when the white man was with them, it would be injurious to their country and a disgrace to themselves, he exhorted them to fight valiantly. This chief was succeeded by several others, who endeavoured by their eloquence to inspire their young men with courage.

After this they all rose, and sang their war song in a loud tone of voice; it was quick, and in many parts not unmusical, and they beat exact time with their feet and hands.

They now all formed themselves into a straight line, the old men at the head. After marching twice round the square, the old men and women filed off for the chief's wigwam, but the young ones continued on to the centre of the square. Musical instruments were now produced, and preparations made for dancing. It commenced by a young man and woman leading off, who danced for some time, and were then joined by others. Their dancing

then jumping up and down, with a harsh noise made by the clapping of their hands.

The dance lasted for some time, when the young men disappeared; they soon returned, habited in their war dress, and painted most hideously. On their appearance the girls retired, and left them in possession of the ground. They commenced their ceremonies by singing and hideous jestures, which lasted near an hour; they then assembled in a circle, and commenced dancing with the most wild and savage manner I ever saw. I understood this was their war dance, and was always performed before they gave an enemy battle; it continued till a late hour, when they separated for the night.

In the morning early, they all assembled for the purpose of invoking their gods, which being done, and three hogs being offered by way of sacrifice, we departed. After a tedious march, we encamped for the night within about seven miles of our enemies.

## CHAP. XII.

*Success of the Indian enterprise—Peace concluded—Description of the manner in which they conclude a treaty—Some account of this nation—curious manner of counting—Author leaves the Yorotees—Description of them—Striking similarity between many of their religious ceremonies and those of the ancient Jews—Comparison of ancient prophecies in relation to the Indians—General observations.*

On the 12th of May we awoke early, and started on our expedition. The Indians were now very cautious in their proceedings, advancing but slowly, and I had an opportunity to view the country, which abounded in all kinds of wild fruits and flowers, with lofty trees whose heads were covered with perpetual verdure. The soil appeared to be a black loam intermixed with a reddish kind of earth, and it is certainly the richest I ever saw.

About noon some of our scouting parties returned, bringing information that the enemy were drawn up in battle array about half a mile distant. At this information our party halted, and a council of war was held. I now advanced, and beckoning with my hand that I wished to be heard, they immediately took me to the centre of the circle, and listened with profound attention. I told them I wanted sixty of their bravest warriors to accompany me, and that with these I would beat their enemies.

The sixty warriors were soon selected, and were the stoutest and bravest in the whole tribe: besides their arms, they had a kind of shield which I had not before noticed; it consisted of buffalo skin cut in a circular form, eight or ten pieces of which, being pounded hard, were fastened together with thongs: it was calculated to resist the force of an arrow, and was a considerable defence to them in time of battle. I directed Edom to take the pistol, with balls, &c. whilst I carried the rifle, which was loaded with a brace of balls. An old chief, who knew where the enemy were encamped, undertook to conduct us to them. I told the warriors that when I gave the signal, they must advance and give their enemies battle, and when they were all drawn out, I would fire and rout them; to this they consented.

In about an hour we were nearly up with the encampment of the enemy, and could hear them singing and dancing; and in a few minutes we heard a yell, by which we knew we were discovered. We now advanced briskly to the contest, and on coming to a hollow I placed Edom in it, telling him to take a favourable opportunity and sally out among them. A little further on, I espied the natives advancing in order of battle: I now halted, and placing myself behind a tree, told the Indians to advance, and after the first discharge of arrows to retreat near to the tree where I stood. I saw it would be more advantageous for Edom to join me, and therefore beckoned for him to come up. In a few minutes I heard the yell of both parties, and saw the arrows flying in the air. Our

brought him to the ground. I now took my pistol and fired again, when another fell. This created consternation and amazement among them: they heard a noise, saw their chief fall, but could not see any appearance of what hurt him. I soon had loaded my piece, and our Indians being anxious to advance, I put myself at their head. We charged with quickness, and on coming within fifty yards of the enemy, I levelled and brought two of them to the ground: at the same time the Indians rushed forwards with horrid yells, and their enemies fled on all sides. They pursued them for some time, and then returned and fell to plundering their camp, and setting fire to their wigwams. The scalp of the chief was presented to me, but I refused to take it, telling them it was not good.

The Indians found large quantities of plunder, which detained them till a late hour to collect; we then all set out for our encampment. When we arrived within about half a mile, they set up a loud and tremendous noise, and were in a short time answered by all those who were waiting for us; it consisted in a kind of song which they chanted with much vehemence, reciting the praises of the warriors who had fallen in battle, their own valour, and the many dangers they had incurred.

When we returned to the village we were received with great demonstrations of joy by all the women, who came out to meet us, dancing and singing. I was very much caressed by the old chief's daughters, who seemed highly pleased at some presents I had made them of beads, and were continually crying *Tee, tee*, with much satisfaction.

to fight them any more, and that they would sue for peace in a few days. He was not mistaken, for on the next day an Indian chief from this tribe was brought in, who said that it was the wish of the nation to have peace; that they had never wished to go to war, but for the chief who was now dead, who had an enmity against them for killing his father. The old man then told him, that on the morrow he would assemble all the chiefs, and that they must have four of theirs, to agree on terms; he then departed.

On the next morning they all assembled round a large fire, nearly in the same order they did when they set out for war, except that the chiefs from the other tribe were placed in the middle. They smoked the pipe of peace, and each chief made a short speech, in which he declared in the name of his nation he had no desire to go to war; this being done, they all fell to dancing, which lasted for a considerable time.

When they had finished dancing, they went to feasting on a buffalo which had been killed and roasted for the occasion. After they had sufficiently satisfied their hunger, they arose and once more smoked the pipe of peace, all standing and looking towards the west; after this they shook hands and parted. Thus was a war concluded which threatened the loss of hundreds in the contest, with the loss of only fourteen or fifteen, and secured to me the gratitude and esteem of the nation.

The nation which I have just had occasion to mention, according to the information I have received from the old man, contains in all about five thousand souls. They are situated about eighty miles from the Red river, about south southwest, on a lake called by the natives Testzapotecas; their country is fertile, abounding in

good pastures, which feed immense herds of buffalo and deer; some antelopes are likewise to be found in the country, the skins of which are seen in plenty among the natives. They are a warlike people, and fond of plunder, making frequent incursions upon the neighbouring tribes; they are stout, robust, and well made, being all of them near six feet in height.

Their marriage ceremonies are somewhat singular, and deserve to be related. When a young man is desirous of obtaining a wife, he goes out, kills a buffalo, and then proceeds to the hut of his sweetheart; he now sets up a lamentable howl, which he continues for some time; at last the damsel appears with a large stick, with which she beats him for some time, he standing entirely still; when she is tired she desists, and he goes his way. This is continued for some time, and if the lover appears not to flinch from the beating, she at last lays down the stick, and sets herself at his feet; the old people then come out and invite him into the hut, which he for some time refuses, but at length consents. On the next day the marriage is solemnized, and he carries her to his hut.

I now thought of proceeding on my journey, and acquainted the chief with my intention, telling him I must proceed. He seemed very loth to have me leave them, and pressed me to stay a little longer: I told him it was impossible. I found we should have to return nearly to the place where we first met the Indians, before we should be enabled to proceed on our journey. I directed Edom to put every thing in readiness, that we might depart on the next day: he was much joyed at this, for however well treated by the Indians, he did not like to be among them.

Early in the morning we were both mounted, having

had the good luck to procure another horse: although they were very scarce, and held in high estimation by the natives, yet they spared me one in consideration of my services to them. We were accompanied by the old chief and several of the natives, who seemed sorry at our departure. When we came near to the place where they must leave me, they all stopped, took me by the hand, and shook it affectionately. They then commenced singing in a low and plaintive tone, which lasted for some time; the old man then advanced, threw a string of wampum around my neck, embraced me, and we parted.

I was much affected by this attention on the part of the savages; it was sincere; they felt what they expressed; and I could not help comparing it with the conduct of many of those who call themselves civilized, and who, while professing sentiments of esteem and regard, are attempting to do a serious injury.

I proceeded on my way, steering as nearly as possible a southwest by a westerly course, in order to strike another tribe of Indians, from whom I expected to collect some considerable information relative to that part of the country. We proceeded without meeting with any thing worthy of notice until night, when we encamped, having come eighteen miles.

The Indians which we had just left, are called the Yorotees. They are small in stature, but well built, and their women handsome. Their clothing is made of the skins of beasts, or of feathers sewed together: it consists of two pieces, one of which reaches from the waist to the knees, and the other is thrown loosely over the shoulders. Their huts are simple in their construction, being four poles set in the earth, which are tied at the top and covered with the leaves or bark of trees. Their household

furniture consists of a few gourds, some leaves, and a stick, with which they strike fire. In their religious ceremonies they are very superstitious, like all other nations who are ignorant of revelation. They have three gods, the principal of which is called *Tetewee*; to him they offer sacrifices of hogs, and the first fruits of the season.

In travelling through different tribes of Indians, I have had opportunity to notice many singularities in their religious worship, which approach near to that of the ancient Jewish religion: singular as this may appear, it is a fact which requires investigation, and is highly deserving the attention of the learned. In this particular tribe I observed many strong traits of Judaism; they circumcise their children; in their religious ordinances they have their high-priest, and in a small house is kept an ark, which it is death for any one to touch but the high-priest. They have likewise three towns which are considered sacred, and if any one kills another and flees to these places of refuge, he is safe and none dare disturb him. They have also, like the Jews, three principal festivals; one is after their hunting is over, when they all assemble, bringing with them their old stock which has remained over the season, and laying it in a pile, when it is set fire to and consumed; they now observe a fast of three days, denying every indulgence, and forgiving all their enemies. The next day after the fast is closed, the high-priest lights a fire by rubbing dry wood together, from which every dwelling is supplied with the sacred flame. The scene now changes; hilarity and mirth reign; new fruits and meats are brought forward, and three days are spent in dancing and amusement.

These circumstances are no less interesting than true, and deserve the serious consideration of the curious. In

many of the prophecies mentioned in the Old and New Testaments, respecting the Jews, there is a striking similarity. It was said to the Israelites, " And they that are left of you shall pine away in their iniquity in your enemies' lands; the land of your enemies shall eat you up." *Levit.* chap. xxvi. And it was very similar with the Indians; the small number of Europeans who first visited this country, were, in comparison of the immense population, but as a grain of sand; yet they succeeded in forcing their way in spite of all opposition, and though the natives were sturdy warriors, nothing but their bones are now left to tell to the world that they once existed. It was also observed in regard to the Israelites, that they should be offered for sale, and few or none should buy them, *Deut.* ch. xxviii.; and in the different wars of the state of Massachusetts, the Indians were sent in great numbers up the Mediterranean, (according to Mr. Hutchinson,) and found few or no purchasers.

The resemblance of many words in their language, is thought by Dr. Edwards to be sufficient to identify the people. Whether this similarity exists with regard to this nation, I cannot say, as I do not understand the language.

The traditions of this tribe relative to events of the eastern continent, and of remote antiquity, are curious, and deserving attention. They have traditions which evidently refer to the creation, the fall of man, the flood, the tower of Babel, and the longevity of antediluvian ages. They say that in ancient times, their ancestors lived till

and the old than has been generally immagined; and that the speculations of different writers relative to the peopling of our continent, and their conjectures that it was accomplished in part by the way of Asia, is not without foundation.

I shall conclude my observations on this people in the language of Dr. Mather Megapolensis, a Dutch missionary, who returned to Europe and published his travels some time ago.

"How far some of these circumstances are common to all nations who approximate to the same state of society, or how far they may be characteristic of the *same* people, I presume not to offer an opinion; but leave it to those who have more learning and more time for investigating it than myself."

## CHAP. XIII.

*Author pursues his journey—Encounters a bear—Extreme tenacity of life in this animal—Reasons why the author wishes to meet with the natives—Observations on the decline of the Spanish monarchy—Author kills an elk—Description of it.*

I PURSUED my journey the next morning without meeting any obstructions, and about seven o'clock we stopped to breakfast on a large tortoise my negro had caught in

wood. I here perceived a number of ducks, one of which I shot, and found it very good meat, although of a fishy taste.

We travelled this day about twenty miles, and encamped for the night. The scene around was truly interesting: the last rays of the setting sun shone upon the tops of the surrounding mountains and trees; the twilight clad all things in a livery of gray; the moon rose with clouded majesty, and threw over the darksome scene her silver mantle. I contemplated the surrounding objects with awe and admiration. All was silent as the hour of death, for beasts and birds had retired to their grassy couch or to their nests. I felt much depressed in spirits, as I was about entering among a tribe of savages with whose character, customs, and language, I was wholly unacquainted, and was altogether uncertain what reception I should meet with from them, which perhaps would be instant death: but I committed myself to the protection of that omnipotent Being who had hitherto directed all my steps; who had been my guide by day and guard by night, and without whose permission the fierce ihabitant of the wood, and all the savage bands, cannot harm; I felt that I was under *His* sole protection. Having no friend to converse with, or cheer the melancholy hour, my heart sunk within me as my mind reverted to past scenes; the recollection of the friends I had left, the almost trackless space that separated me from all my heart held dear, with a thousand tender reflections, crowded upon my mind, till at length, overpowered with fatigue, I fell asleep, having the cold earth for my bed, and the canopy of heaven for my covering.

traveller, are the first rays in the east; yet how much more glorious and resplendent does it appear, when, risen above the horizon, the sun comes to full view, to cheer all nature with his beams; the bloom of spring presents itself on every side, and in the enjoyment of its fragrance are felt new delights, while every sorrowful idea gradually retires from the bosom.

We arose and pursued our journey; we had not travelled over four miles, when Edom stopped and exclaimed, See there, master. I looked, and saw one of the largest bears my eyes ever beheld; he seemed to be of a kind I had not before seen, and kept his eyes constantly fixed on me; I stopped and levelled my gun, which was loaded with ball. The moment I fired he sprang towards me, and I had but just time to get into a tree, when he was at my horse's feet; he seemed regardless of him, and immediately prepared to ascend the tree. My situation was truly dangerous; fortunately I had my ammunition with me, and I set about loading my gun. The bear, although severely wounded, was determined to ascend the tree, and I had every thing to fear; he had not seen Edom, who now advanced and levelled at him with his pistol; the ball entered his lungs, but so tenacious was he of life that he now seemed possessed of more strength than ever, and seemed determined to ascend the tree. My rifle being loaded, I levelled and shot him through the head; he fell to the ground, bellowing and rolling about, and when I descended from the tree he had breathed his last.

off of him, and kept the remainder for the time of need. We proceeded on our journey, and encamped for the night about ten miles distant from where I killed the bear, as it took us some time to skin him, and secure that part of his meat which would be of service to us.

The next morning the sky was overcast, and I dreaded a storm; I nevertheless pursued my journey, as I was anxious to arrive among those tribes where I had understood there was something which would amply compensate me for all my difficulties, toils, and dangers. I had travelled about two thousand miles, through an almost impassable wilderness, and I felt anxious to obtain something which would compensate me for all my sufferings.

This country abounds in mines and other natural riches, and is abundantly furnished with every thing which could give peace and plenty to the heart of man, and that too without any of his labour. I cannot but acknowledge, however, that an influx of wealth cannot make a people happy; and that agriculture is better calculated for it than any other employment which we know of. Spain, by the immense sums which it has drawn from the mines of Potosi, has been enabled to deluge her country with wealth, without however affording it even the shadow of happiness. She has become effeminate; agriculture and the fine arts are neglected. Many of her kings thought themselves inexhaustible in wealth, and waged long and bloody wars against the different European nations; the consequence has been, that she is drained of her men and money; her flourishing manufactures have fallen into decay; her fleets, which have been the terror of Europe, are all destroyed; her exten-

employed in carrying it on, taken and plundered by enemies she once despised.

Such is the present degraded state of a country which once furnished the best fleet in Europe; and whose decline has been hastened by the immense sums she has drawn from the new world.

Why then, it may be asked, was I anxious to procure that which had been the source of so many misfortunes to flourishing nations? I answer, because, with the majority of mankind, I thought that, if used with propriety, it could be made the source of happiness, and become a real blessing to mankind; as the right application of riches cannot but ensure to the possessor the happiness of an approving conscience.

About twelve o'clock it cleared away, and the sun shone with brilliancy. The season had now become mild and serene, and I was rapidly advancing into that climate which breathes perpetual spring; the birds sang with the sweetest melody, the trees yielded a rich perfume, and scattered their fragrance over a thousand hills. Having travelled about twenty-five miles, we encamped for the night.

In the morning we were much put to it for the want of provision, this article having become scarce within a few days. We had proceeded about five miles when we opened upon a rich meadow, and perceived a small herd of elk grazing, who had not yet observed us; they were the first I had seen during my travels, and I felt anxious to get a shot at them. I directed Edom to dismount and hold both our horses, whilst I advanced cautiously along

did not observe me; judging I was near enough, I levelled my piece and brought one of them to the ground, and the others ran off with astonishing rapidity. I advanced to the one I had killed, and found him fat and fit for roasting.

As this was the first elk I had an opportunity of seeing, I shall give a short description of him. He measured nine feet from the end of the muzzle to the root of the tail, the head and neck being extended in a line with the body; its height at the shoulder was four feet six inches; length of the head one foot six inches; length of the fore-legs two feet five inches; length of the neck two feet six inches; its ears measured nine inches, and its tail three. Its horns were not palmatic, like those of the moose; they were large, and measured about five feet from tip to tip. The antlers were round and pointed at the ends, the lowermost forming a curve downward over each eye, to which they appeared a defence. Its hair was long, of a dark dun colour on the back and sides, and of a dark brown on the head and legs. Its eyes were full and lively, and below each there was a deep slit about two inches in length, the use of which I was unable to determine. They are very lively and active, of great strength of body and limbs; their hoofs are short and like those of a calf; the division between them is less than in those of the reindeer, and when the animal is in motion they do not make a rattling noise. They have no mane, but the hair under the

## CHAP. XIV.

*Description of the country—Author meets two Indian hunters—Manner of their taking buffalo—Author goes with them to their tribe—Friendly reception from the chief of the Mnacedeus—Singular treatment received by Edom—Preparations of the natives for a grand hunt—Author accompanies them—Consternation of the Indians at seeing firearms.*

We had now a sufficiency of provision, which would enable us to travel some days; and I felt anxious to arrive among a tribe of Indians, from whom I expected to receive valuable information. I found by examining my maps that I had already deviated a considerable distance from the direct road to Mexico; and owing to the troubles which were daily taking place in that fine country, I determined to take a circuitous route, and explore the western part of that country which borders on Mexico, previous to entering the Mexican empire.

We pursued our journey until we came to a broad stream, over which we swam our horses, and entered into a country which was more mountainous and woody than any I had seen: the wood principally consisted of black ash, sycamore, black walnut, hickory, and lofty magnolias; indeed this is the common growth of the country, although there are many other sorts, but not in plenty. Among the number which I saw was the cork tree, some

camped at night, after having come about twenty-five miles.

In the morning I was awaked by Edom, who informed me that he heard a noise as of some one singing. I immediately arose, and made such preparations as were necessary, fearing I should have to contend with an enemy. As it was daylight, I thought it best to pursue our journey. We had not gone far when I perceived a smoke, which appeared to be at no great distance, and exactly in our track. I examined my rifle and pistol, putting myself in readiness to meet an enemy. In a few minutes an opening in the trees discovered to me two Indians, who had not as yet seen us. We advanced with caution, being fearful of giving alarm; in a few minutes they perceived us, and seemed much struck with surprise. I held out my hand, and endeavoured by signs to convince them that I was friendly disposed. I dismounted my horse, and advanced towards them: they eyed me with distrust, but did not attempt to run away. When I came near I offered my hand, which one of them advancing took hold of, seeming much pleased with me.

I now conversed with them by signs, endeavouring to learn how far it was to the next tribe of Indians, and to what tribe they belonged; they told me their tribe was distant three days' journey, and was the nearest tribe by many miles; that they had been out a hunting, and were now returning home. I found to my surprise that I had deviated a considerable distance from the course I had in-

they set about arranging their hunting apparatus and preparing to return.

I found they had killed about fourteen buffalo, nine bears, and three elk; the natives inform me that these last animals are caught with difficulty; and it is very seldom they get more than three or four of them during the season. The buffalo are numerous, and more easily ensnared; their manner of taking them is singular and worthy of description.

The traps are composed of trees laid one upon another, to the height of about six feet, forming a square of about fifty feet on each side. On that side where they intend the animal shall enter, a quantity of earth is laid, to the height of the construction, so as to form an easy ascent of about twenty feet. A number of branches of trees are placed from each side of the front, in a straight line from the raised hill, for about one hundred feet in length, continually increasing in width, so that the exterior end exceeds two hundred feet. A number of poles about sixteen feet in length are placed at about fourteen feet from each other, with a piece of buffalo dung on the top, and in a straight line from the boughs abovementioned. At the foot of these poles, the hunter always lies concealed to keep the animal in a straight direction, being wrapped in a buffalo skin. These poles are placed alike on each side, always increasing in breadth from one side to the other, and decreasing as the animal approaches the pound. When these traps are thus made, the hunters set off and find a herd of buffalo, which they drive easily along till they arrive in the vicinity of the pound; then one of them

within the exterior line of poles; if any attempt to go out, which is frequently the case, they are prevented by the hunters' shaking their buffalo hides, which drives them forward; so that at last they arrive at the pound, and fall headlong one upon another, some breaking their necks, backs, &c.; and now the confusion becomes general, and although the pound is no more than six feet high, none will make their escape.

On the morning of the next day, the Indians being ready, we commenced our journey, and proceeded through a thick forest of tall and stately trees, after which we opened upon an extensive plain. We saw nothing worth mentioning, and at night encamped, having come thirty miles.

The Indians told me they were of the Mnacedeus tribe; that they had been out about twelve days, and that they were returning on account of a grand hunting match, which they said was given in consequence of the marriage of their chief's daughter.

The next morning we started early, and had proceeded a considerable distance, when Edom's horse became so lame that it was with difficulty he could get along. Understanding that there were plenty of horses in their tribe, I thought it best to leave our lame one, and mount Edom behind one of the Indians, who had offered to take him up. This being arranged, we proceeded along through fine level plains, which abounded in all the fruits common to this country. At night we encamped, having come about twenty-eight miles.

The country through which we now passed was level, bounded on both sides by hills, which gradually swell

places a clayey kind of earth, which appeared well calculated for grain of any kind.

In the course of this day's journey I picked up some pieces of mica and some quartz, which are not common in this part of the country. The natives informed me that there were stones of a shining appearance and very hard, in a mountain about a day's journey from their village; this mountain I was determined to visit, and to examine the stones for myself, if I could obtain the consent of the natives.

The next morning the Indians awaked me early, and we proceeded on our journey without any thing remarkable taking place, until after we entered a defile of the mountains, where we found the road very bad, and were under the necessity of leading our horses. About 4 o'clock we came up to the village, where we were received by all the natives, who were drawn out to see us; from the curiosity that was excited, I judged that a great part of them had never seen a white man before. They conducted me to the chief, who I found habited in a deer skin, which was thrown over his shoulders, with a head dress of feathers, and ear-rings made of bone. He received me very courteously, and after shaking me by the hand, enquired by signs from whence I came. I gave him to understand that I had come a great ways from the southeast, and was going towards a nation of whites at a great distance off. He seemed satisfied with my answers, and directed me to a hut where I found plenty of refreshments.

My negro underwent a much closer investigation; he

the black; when they found this impossible, they would go off a great distance, set up a loud laugh, and dance up to him with great good humour. The old chief called him into his tent, and would have made him sleep at his feet, had not Edom told him he must keep with his master and take care of him, to which the old chief very readily consented.

The nation were all busy in their preparations for a hunt, which was to take place in a few days, and in which all the great men and warriors were to be engaged. It was given, as I was made to understand, in consequence of a marriage which had been solemnized a few days before, between the principal warrior of the tribe, and the chief's daughter. The warrior was a tall, stout, well made Indian, of a rather lighter complexion than the others, which I was told was occasioned by his being born of a woman who did not belong to their tribe; it being customary among them to adopt the prisoners taken in war, and marry them the same as their own children. He was called *scalper*, which upon inquiry I found was a name he had assumed since he became a man, it being customary for them to have a name given, which they are under the necessity of retaining until they perform some exploit either in hunting or war which will entitle them to take a new name, when they are admitted into the council of warriors with great ceremony. They choose what name they please, which generally has some reference to a distinguished action they have performed. This man was called *scalper*, on account of his having taken sixty-three scalps in one day from a nation with whom they were

melancholy in her countenance, which induced me to think she was not entirely happy in her new husband; and he had a savage look which was far from being pleasing, and more so than the natives of this tribe generally have.

On the morning of the fourth day after my arrival, being the 16th of July, 1812, they sat out on their hunting excursion. The party consisted of all the chief warriors and young men of five of their principal towns, and amounted in all to about one thousand. They were armed with spears and arrows. Their spears were about fourteen feet in length, made of a kind of wood which I did not know the name of; the tree grows to the height of five and twenty feet, and has small sharp pointed leaves. The spears are pointed at the end with bone, which is very sharp and smooth. Their arrows are made of white oak, about six feet long, and those used for hunting are blunted so as not to injure the skin of those birds they kill; those used for war are pointed, and dipped in a poisonous kind of liquor.

We had about eight miles to go to the place where they expected to find their game, which was through a wood, thick and almost impassable. At last we arrived in the neighbourhood of a pond about a mile in extent, around which the land was clear; in the middle of the lake there was a small island, which was thickly studded with woods, and where there was plenty of game; but there were no canoes, and I waited with impatience to see in what manner they would kill their game at the distance of an hundred and fifty yards, and where the birds had the benefit of thick trees to shade them from their ene-

considered a great hunter, and received the loudest applause.

I had brought my musket, which in fact was never out of my hands day nor night, and I judged I should be enabled not only to amuse the natives, but to give them a high opinion of my consequence. I had not as yet fired my gun, and I judged very few of these Indians had ever seen firearms before. They made several attempts with their arrows and spears, which, though directed with great exactness, were nevertheless unsuccessful. I now had a fine opportunity of showing my dexterity, as a deer of the largest size came to the beach to drink; several arrows were discharged, which did not reach their object, nor alarm him. I levelled my gun, and as he raised his head, fired; he fell, and the noise of the piece rolled along the hills, and re-echoed from every cavern. I looked around me, but not an Indian was to be seen; they had fled with precipitation. At last the old chief ventured to make his appearance, and after contemplating me for some time, advanced and asked me if the Great Spirit was any more angry. I felt my risible faculties so strongly excited by this question, that I had much difficulty in keeping from laughing. I assured him he had nothing to fear, and directed him to call his companions. In a few minutes they all appeared, but with astonishment marked in their countenances; they approached me with caution, and kept a suspicious eye upon my gun. I now

handed it to his son-in-law, who, after viewing it for some time, returned it to me, telling me by signs I must fire again. I accordingly loaded my gun, and in a few minutes, seeing four ducks on the wing, fired, and brought three of them down; when I fired the Indians all stopped their ears and shut their eyes.

After getting the ducks, the chief directed the hunters to move on to an open plain, and there to hunt the buffalo; this was to be done on horses, some going on one side, and some on the other, whilst those that remained in the rear were to keep the game from escaping. The chase soon began, and was conducted with great skill by the Indians, who were armed with a long spear, and rode without a saddle. This manner of taking game, however, is not so safe nor so quick as with the traps, and is never practiced but upon particular occasions, when they wish to show their horsemanship, which is far from being contemptible.

## CHAP. XV.

*Author sets out for a larger village of the Mnacedeus—Observes strong marks of a Welch origin in this tribe—Similarity of their marriages and funerals with those of the Welch—Author hears of a white man who is among them—Finds considerable platina in their possession—Ineffectual attempts to discover where they procure it—Feigns himself sick—Curious treatment.*

from the chief to visit it. He sent an Indian with me, with orders to the chief of the village to use me well and take special care of my property.

I had understood from Dr. Sibley, when I was in Natchitoches, that a number of travellers in our western territories had asserted, that there was a strong similarity between the Indian language, and many words of the Welch, which had led to conjectures that it was probable they had descended from emigrants from that country, many years before its discovery by Columbus. I had been very careful in my inquiries among the different tribes I had occasion to visit; but had obtained no satisfaction as yet relative to so important a point.

When I arrived in this village I perceived something which struck me very forcibly as being different from any thing I had before seen in any Indian town; and being always attentive to things which had a singular appearance, I set about making such observations as would lead to a discovery of the cause. There is a striking similarity between their customs and those of the Welch; exclusive of this, they have printed books among them, which are preserved with great care, they having a tradition that they were brought there by their forefathers.

Besides this, many of their customs are very similar; their marriage ceremonies, for instance, which I had an opportunity of seeing. After the couple are married, a spot of ground is selected, and each one of the male relations contribute in forming a hut for the young couple, while the care of furnishing it is left to the female relations. In their funeral ceremonies there is something which approaches near to that of the Welch. Each one

to do their duty towards him. Now these circumstances, I am well aware, are not conclusive testimony, but the similarity is very striking. In the marriages of the Welch, according to the Rev. Dr. Bingley, they make a collection to defray the expenses of the occasion, and aid the new married couple; in their funerals, it is customary after prayer for four of the nearest kin to the corpse to carry it to the grave. I did not understand the Welch language, or I should have been enabled to have thrown more light upon so interesting a subject. The books appeared very old, and were evidently printed at a time when there had been very little improvement made in the casting of types. I obtained a few leaves from one of the chiefs, sufficient to have thrown light on the subject; but in my subsequent disputes with the Indians I lost them, and all my endeavours to obtain more were ineffectual.

Upon my return to Natchitoches, communicating the above information to some gentlemen whom I met at Dr. Sibley's, one of them assured me that about two years before he conversed with a Welch gentleman who had been employed by the Hudson bay company, and had been recently in the vicinity of the Red river, that he there met Indians whose dialect he well understood; whose women were much fairer than ordinary, and many of whose customs agreed with those of his own country; that he too had been shown a printed book, but could not read it, owing as he thought to its being of so ancient a date; all his attempts to procure it were ineffectual.

I offer these accounts to the public without any comments: they are vague, and in many parts unsatisfactory; but certain it is, if these are facts, it demands the serious

reasons which cause mankind to degenerate when left to themselves.

The only historical information which serves to throw any light upon the subject, is an account given by Mr. Powell, in his History of Wales, which relates, that in the twelfth century, Madoc, the youngest son of Madoc ap Shenkin, weary of contending for his father's crown, left his country, and sailed from Wales a due west course till he discovered an unknown country. That he afterwards returned, and made such favourable report of the land as induced numbers to embark with him. He returned again to his country, and sailed a third time, and has never been heard of since.

For some days after my arrival I was quite unwell, which was the only sickness I had experienced for some months. I found the chief with whom I now lived a man about forty years of age, stout, and well made, though not tall; he was married, and had three children, all daughters. One of his daughters were married to a young warrior who had been wounded in battle and had not yet recovered. He told me that many moons ago there came among them a white man, who wished to stay and become one of them; that they gave him a wife; that he was now living, but gone on a hunting party. I felt anxious to see this man, as much from curiosity as any thing; for what rational being, thought I, who had been accustomed to the sweets of civilized society, would wish to leave their haunts and join a horde of savages.

In my observations on the women, I perceived some very fine pieces of metal which looked like platina; I enquired of the natives where they got it, but could get no satisfactory answer, as they always appeared to evade

the question whenever it was put to them. I nevertheless determined to discover it if possible, as the value of the discovery would amply repay me for all my dangers and disappointments.

These Indians, although they did not seem acquainted with white men, yet appeared to understand that the primary cause of all the misfortunes which had attended the aboriginal inhabitants, was their having mines in their country which were sought after by the whites. Fearing that they might fall a prey to this avarice and rapacity, they had determined to keep their mines a secret and discover them to no one; I, however, trusted still to chance, and as I saw enough of the metal and other circumstances to convince me there were mines in their tribe, and that too of considerable extent, I was determined to remain among them for some time at least, in order to discover them.

I found it would be necessary, in order to remain among them without suspicion, that I should feign myself sick; accordingly one night about 12 o'clock I sent for the old chief, and appeared in violent distress. I told him I was unwell, and requested something which would relieve my pain. He immediately commenced rubbing my temples, applying warm stones to my feet, and endeavoured to get me into a profuse perspiration. After about half an hour's attendance, finding I was easier, he left me, but in the morning returned, attended by one of the priests, who acted as a physician; he took out of a small bag some dried leaves, which he pulverized very fine in his hand; then taking a small piece of fat of a

throwing stones into it; after it was sufficiently hot, he threw in a quantity of herbs, and covered it over with a piece of bear skin. He now drew me towards the fire, and after stripping off my shirt, he anointed my back with the ointment he had made, rubbing it with such violence as to force drops of sweat from my face. He now opened a gourd which contained some tea, and gave me to drink plentifully of it; this threw me into a profuse sweat. I felt a drowsiness, and in a few minutes after he had left me I fell into a profound sleep.

When I awoke I found myself much weakened, and on my attempting to stir I was so sore as rendered it impossible. In a few minutes the chief and the doctor entered, who enquired how I did. I assured him I was better, but complained of being very sore. He then looked at my back, and without saying one word, applied more ointment. I expostulated, but all in vain; he seemed to pay no regard to my entreaties, and by the next morning I found my back as raw as a piece of beef, which confined me to my hut for about three weeks. During my confinement, the chief and the doctor visited me constantly, and seemed by their attentions to be anxious for my recovery, although when I complained of my back they would shrug up their shoulders, and smile at each other.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Author is introduced to the white man—His account of himself—Author gains his confidence and is shown the platina mine—Description of it—Author returns to the town.*

During the time of my confinement I saw no one but the old man, the priest, who acted as doctor, and my faithful negro. I understood that the white man had returned from hunting, but was not permitted to see him until my recovery; this was very slow, owing to the extreme soreness of my back, for the salve which my doctor made use of had drawn more violently than any of our cantharides.

In about three weeks I was allowed to leave my hut, which was attended with some ceremony, in the evening the young women assembling and dancing before my hut, as a sign of joy at my recovery. The next morning I was conducted to a hut in which sat a number of Indians, and after remaining there some time was asked if I did not see any one who looked like a white man. I now examined every one with attention, but could see no one who appeared different from the Indians. At last the man arose, took me by the hand, and spoke to me in English, rendered almost unintelligible by disuse. I an-

ceiving me to look at him with an eye of curiosity, he told me that he would readily tell me what had induced him to leave civilized society, if I would promise not to tell the Indians, nor shun him while I remained among them; to this I agreed, and he seated himself and began as follows:

"My name is Davis; I was born in one of the northern states, but shall avoid particularizing where, as my relatives have long thought me dead. My parents, in my early days, endeavoured to instil into my mind the sentiments of religion, and gave me such an education as their circumstances would permit. My temper was violent, and even in my younger years would break out with such fury, as at times to alarm my father and mother. They would expostulate with me, and endeavour to convince me of my error; but I seldom listened to their admonitions, and would frequently, as soon as they were out of sight, make game of them, and turn their good advice into ridicule. It was my disobedience and contempt of my parents' commands, which laid the foundation of all my future misfortunes.

"At an early age I left my parents and went to sea. I had not been out but about twelve days when a violent storm arose, which in a few hours reduced our vessel to such a wreck as made it necessary for us to take the boat. In this situation we drifted about for three days, when we were picked up by an English sloop of war, and immediately seized upon and compelled to do duty on board this vessel. I shall pass over the hardships and difficul-

risen from the dead, and freely forgave me all the tears and anxiety I had caused them.

"My mind was softened by the caresses and kind expressions which I received from my parents, and when I contrasted it with the late cruel treatment I had received on board of British ships, I resolved never to offend nor grieve them more. For some time I kept my resolutions; but alas, the instability of all human resolutions; those caresses which had made me resolve to conduct with propriety, and govern my temper, were soon treated with contempt, and too often I repaid their expressions of kindness with rudeness and disdain.

"I now paid my addresses to a young woman of the most amiable temper, who lived about a mile from my father's. She was handsome; and what was more, her mind was cultivated, her temper sweet, and she possessed all those qualities which adorn her sex, and render them a blessing to mankind. My mother saw my attachment with approbation, and felt anxious that I might attain a woman of so sweet a temper, in hopes that it would soften and ameliorate my own; alas! little did she think of the wretchedness it would bring upon one who was worthy of having her path strewed with flowers.

"In a short time after we were married, my temper, which had kept within bounds, broke out with renewed violence, and seemed to have gained fresh strength from having been so long smothered. My wife bore it with meekness and resignation, and if ever she murmured it was in secret; when before me, her face was always clad

had two children; they were lovely as their mother, and seemed to inherit all her good qualities. My temper grew worse and worse, if it were possible, and at length my wife told me, in mild terms, that if I continued to conduct myself in such a manner, she should be under the necessity of leaving me; at this I flew at her with violence, and gave her several blows which she bore with meekness; my oldest child came accidentally between us, and received a blow which laid it dead at my feet. All the feelings of the mother were now roused; she called me an inhuman wretch, the murderer of my child, and threatened to have me made a public example. This roused me from the stupor into which I had sunk on seeing my child dead at my feet, and I determined at once to rid myself of the only one who could possibly bring me to punishment; I seized her by the hair, and in a few minutes she was no more."

Here he stopped, overcome with his emotion, and covered his face with both his hands. I was so much shocked and surprised that it was impossible for me to ask him to proceed, or even to utter a syllable. At length he recovered, and taking me by the hand, asked me if I did not think him a wretch who ought to be banished from all society and ranked among the brutes. Before I had time to reply, he exclaimed in a wild and frantic manner, "I know you do, and had you known my beloved Maria you would call me the greatest monster that ever lived: she loved me with tenderness, and sought every opportunity of calming my temper and ren-

ed him to inform me how he came among these Indians: he told me that he immediately left the house, after securing the doors, taking with him what cash he had on hand, his youngest child having been left at his father's some days before. He took passage on board a vessel bound to New-York, which sailed at 12 o'clock that night, and had a very quick passage. On his arrival he went on board a vessel bound to New-Orleans, which sailed the next day. After his arrival at New-Orleans, he engaged with some men who were about ascending the Missisippi. On his arrival at the Red river he left them, and proceeded till he found this nation, who had given him a friendly reception, and among whom he had continued ever since.

Having heard him with attention until he had finished his story, I thought it my duty before I left him to endeavour to convince him that his present course of life was not calculated to render him happy here or hereafter. I therefore seriously expostulated with him, and assured him of the mercy which was always extended to those who were truly penitent, and who, with the humble publican, approached the mercy seat with this prayer, "God be merciful to me a sinner." You may now be enabled, said I, by a variety of employments, to drive the thoughts of a future state from your mind, and for a time to become indifferent about your immortal interests; but this will not always be the case; the period is approaching in which conscience, if not quite petrified, will be roused from her torpor—in which she will sound the alarm, and the soul, awakened from its sleep, feel the vanity of all

of duty—of having passed your life heedless of the counsels of parental affection, or such as experience or religion dictated. It is indeed possible that your mind may be diverted from a minute attention to the turpitude of its own actions, but the delusion will not last for ever; a man cannot always trifle; the hour of reflection will obtrude; and if you be determined not to anticipate, you will shortly be compelled to realize the period when deception and artifice will be impracticable; when all terrestrial scenes will be withdrawn; when the soul, no longer soothed by flattery, nor seduced by hope, must converse with death; and this too in a moment when the avenues of mercy are closed for ever, and in which your affrighted soul will have to exclaim in the terrors of despair, "the harvest is past, the summer is ended, and I am not saved."

He thanked me for my advice, and seemed much affected. I felt a depression of spirits which it was impossible for me to overcome, and after assuring him I would not impart it to the Indians, or any one who could do him an injury, I departed for my hut, being unable any longer to bear a conversation with him. When I entered my hut I found the old chief, who had been waiting for me some time; he examined my back, which he found doing very well, and in a few minutes after he left me.

I had been about two months with this tribe, during which time I had made vain endeavours to discover where their mine of platina was; all my endeavours to obtain information from the natives had not been attended with success. I concluded the white man would be the most

fidence by such presents as it was in my power to give, and were most likely to meet his attention.

In a few days I gave him a knife, some strings of beads, and showed him a quantity of specie, which I told him was at his service; at the same time drawing him artfully into a conversation relative to the mine of platina, showing him a small piece I had procured from one of the natives, and requesting him to give me such information as was in his power respecting it.

He hesitated for some time, and at last observed, that if it was known to the natives that he had told me, death, and that of the most horrid kind, would be the consequence. I assured him he had nothing to fear on that account, as I should be so cautious in all my proceedings as to render it impossible for me to be discovered. He at last consented, telling me that the Indians only worked it occasionally, and that it was situated about twenty miles southwest of the town; that if I had a mind to go he would conduct me, but it would be necessary for us to start in the morning before daylight, that the natives might not discover us; I consented, and the next morning was appointed for us to commence our excursion.

During the remainder of the day I arranged my affairs, and cleaned my rifle and pistol. I directed Edom, in case any of the natives should make particular enquiry in the morning for me, to tell them I had gone out, a thing that was customary, but would return in the course of the day.

I arose the next morning about 2 o'clock, and being

through the woods, and wound around the foot of the mountain. The road soon began to grow steep and difficult; huge and craggy rocks, whose sharp points tore our clothes and lacerated our bodies, formed a principal part of the road. We proceeded with the greatest difficulty, leading our horses, and clambering over steep precipices that were formed by the fissures of the rocks. After a tedious journey we arrived at the top of one of the mountains which form this chain, and my guide now informed me we were within a short distance of the object of my pursuit. We sat down and rested ourselves for some time; and when the sun arose, hastened to explore the mine before we should be missed by the natives. We soon arrived at its mouth, and began to descend. I found that the natives had not worked it very deep. It was situated at the top of one of those mountains which skirt the village; the mountain is very flat for near a quarter of a mile, and covered with a rich long grass, which is enamelled with a thousand flowers. The vein extends from west to east, and is so rich that the platina may be cut with a knife. Indeed, it would never have been worked by the natives had not that been the case; for they have no implements suitable for working mines, nor any idea of what is necessary.

I took several pieces of the metal, which I found to be purer than any I had before seen. Davis begged me to conceal it in such a manner as that it would not be discovered by the natives, and I assured him I should bury it on my return to my hut.

We returned by the same way we had come, making

path, when we were met by two Indians who were going a fishing. On being told we had been hunting they passed us without suspicion, and I reached my hut in safety, where I deposited my booty, and set about making arrangements for another visit to the mine.

---

## CHAP. XVII.

*Author is detained from visiting the mountain by bad weather—Melancholy of the white Indian—Author goes to the mine—Betrayed and taken by the natives—Examination by the principal chiefs—Sentenced to be shot—Rescued by the humanity of the Indian chief's daughter—Joy of Edom at my deliverance—Reasons why I was betrayed—Verses by the Duchess of Devonshire—Author pursues his journey—More particulars respecting the Mnacedeus tribe—Importance to the United States of working mines.*

THE next morning it rained with violence; the storm continued for four or five days, during which time I had no opportunities of visiting the mine, but employed the time in arranging my papers, and making particular observations on the manners and customs of the natives, the construction of their huts, &c.

The white Indian visited me very constantly, and con-

he had considerable influence. He appeared to be a man of good information, and would many times converse with gaiety and good humour. He nevertheless would frequently be sunk in the greatest despondency, and set with his eyes fixed upon the ground for hours; he would then start from his seat, rush into the thickest part of the woods, and remain for the rest of the day. The Indians ceased to be surprised at his conduct, and the old chief told me that they thought him troubled by the Great Spirit; I was of their opinion, for he must have felt the gnawings of a guilty conscience, which is, to use the emphatical language of Scripture, "the worm that never dies."

As soon as the weather became fine I made a journey to the mine. The plan I adopted was this: as soon as the Indians retired to rest, myself and Edom would sally forth, and taking our horses which were grazing near the skirts of the town, proceed with a quick pace till we reached the foot of the mountain where the mine lay, leave our horses and proceed on foot; and we generally succeeded in returning by daylight.

The white Indian had never been with me to the mine since the first time, and never attempted to converse with me on the subject; he would generally visit me once a day. He came in one morning about 10 o'clock, unperceived by me as I was employed in writing; he stood some time, and when I turned and discovered him, his counte-

In the evening myself and Edom again started for the mine; we had now made three journeys, and judging I had as much as we could conveniently carry, was determined this should be the last.

The moon shone with unusual brightness, and I began already to anticipate a rich reward for all my labours; but man is born for disappointments, and the moment his cup appears full it is suddenly dashed from his lips, and he is constrained to acknowledge that there is no permanent happiness on this terrestrial globe. If we would find happiness, we must look to that brighter and better world which has the immediate presence of Him "with whom there is no variableness nor shadow of turning."

I arrived at the mouth of the mine and was preparing to descend, when Edom exclaimed that he saw some one among the long grass which covered the mountain. I immediately seized my rifle, but before I could get it in a position to defend myself, I was surrounded by about fifty Indians, who immediately seized my gun and bound me with thongs of buffalo skin. Edom was less fortunate, for atttempting to make some resistance, they knocked him on the head, and would in all probability have dispatched him had it not been for the positive command of a chief, who had orders to bring us alive before the principal council.

We were conducted with much silence, the Indians scarcely speaking a word. I attempted several times to converse with the chief who conducted us, but was always commanded to keep silence. We were conducted by a nearer path than the one by which we came, and in a short time arrived at the village. They put me in

reflect upon my situation, and expected that nothing but the most lingering death awaited me.

In the morning I was taken from the hut and examined by the principal chiefs, who were seated around a fire at the door of the old chief's hut. Not a person was to be seen but the Indians who guarded me and the chiefs who formed the council. Profound silence reigned, when the old chief began his interrogations. He first inquired the cause of my going to the mountain; I told him I had been a hunting a few days before, when I had accidentally discovered some metal, and not knowing what it was I had gone back to get some and see what was its value. The old chief shook his head, and seemed not satisfied with the answer. I was asked several other questions, which principally related to leaving my country, reasons for travelling among them, &c. I answered all of them as well as I could, and after being about an hour in their presence they conducted me again to my hut.

The next day I was permitted to remain where I was. I requested leave to see the white Indian, which they denied me, alledging as an excuse, that he was sick, and could not see me; my man Edom was however brought to the hut, who assured me that he was free, as the Indians thought that he was not guilty, and would not have gone had it not have been for me.

On the morning of the third day I was conducted from my hut to the great square, where I found every inhabitant of the village who was over fourteen years of age.

I was now brought forward, and the old chief addressed me, charging me with a wish to destroy their nation by tempting white men to come among them; he charged me with falsehood in telling them that it was the first time I had been at the mine, as I had more platina in my hut than could be brought away at once; he uncovered a heap that lay at one end of the stage, and showed me all I had brought from the mine; he then told me that I must prepare for death as I should be shot in about an hour.

My feelings cannot be described when this information was communicated to me; but it was grateful to me to see that the greater part of the Indians, particularly the females, were much affected at the severity of the sentence; indeed I had conducted myself with such strict propriety, and made the natives such a number of little presents that there was not one who had any ill will towards me.

I requested to see Edom, and he was conducted towards me. When the poor fellow understood I was to be shot, he could scarce keep within the bounds of reason; he tore his hair, threw himself upon the ground, and it was some time before I could induce him to hearken to me; at last he became more calm. I told him he must endeavour to get back to New-Orleans, on my account, as I wanted him to carry information to my friends; I told him that after my death he must collect such articles as were allowed him of mine, particularly my papers, and deliver them to Dr. De Fludcar: he promised me he would. I then requested him to leave me, as my time

He now left me, and I turned my attention to that Being in whose hands are the "issues of life and death." Although I had by no means been faithful to the divine commands, and had, in common with all mankind, gone far from the path which is marked out by strict rectitude and propriety, I nevertheless knew he was a God who cast none off in the hour that they approached his footstool, and humbly asked forgiveness of their transgressions; for who was to set bounds to *Infinite Mercy?* or, where is the humble, contrite penitent, who went away from the temple of Omnipotence, without receiving some token of the Divine favour? I prayed with fervency, relying entirely on God for protection, knowing it was in his power to work out my deliverance; and if it was thought necessary for me to bow my head to the king of terrors, I exclaimed with the divine Jesus, "Thy will not mine be done."

I arose from my devotions with calmness, and awaited the determinations of my judges. In a few minutes the chief arose, and by a motion of his hand, announced the time had arrived when I was to be led to execution; they advanced and bound my hands with thongs; they then led me to a stake, and fastened me to it by another thong; six of the natives were arranged in front of me, ready to draw their arrows to the head and pierce me to the heart. At this moment a circumstance occurred, as unlooked for by me, as it was singular and interesting.

The moment that the arrows were drawn to their heads, and the Indians ready to execute their fatal sentence, the youngest daughter of the principal chief ad-

towards me, and cutting the thong which bound me to the stake, with a knife I had given her a few days before, she led me forward to the platform on which the chiefs sat; she then addressed them with earnestness, frequently pointing to me and then to the sun. After she had continued for some time in this manner, the old chief arose, and spoke a few words, when the Indians shouted and danced with great violence. They would have advanced towards me had not the chief in a loud and commanding tone ordered them to desist and retire to their huts; this they did with reluctance. When they had all gone, my deliverer took me by the hand, and led me to her hut; she gave me some refreshment, but told me I must depart on the next evening. I was very glad to hear this, and told her I should cheerfully comply with any thing she should deem proper. The exertions of the day had much fatigued me, and I felt happy to be left alone.

It is impossible to describe the joy of Edom at my deliverance from almost certain death: he had stood at a short distance from me, and beheld with silent despair the arrows which were to deprive him for ever of my guidance and direction; and he beheld with the most lively satisfaction the manner in which I had been rescued.

It may be necessary for me to account in some manner for the detection which caused all my present misfortunes. It will be recollected that I mentioned my being seen writing by the white man; he seemed much surprised at it, and I observed that in his communications with me

and for some time before my being taken up he had avoided visiting me, alledging that he was unwell. His gloomy and suspicious temper had led him to imagine that I was making observations for the purpose of doing him an injury; he therefore resolved to give information to the natives of my having discovered their mines, knowing that the consequence of my detection would be immediate death. Although I did not see him after my being brought from the mine, yet I had reasons for believing that he directed all their councils; and the discovery of the ore which I had buried sufficiently proved it, as it was secreted in such a manner as to elude the most rigid scrutiny.

I remained in the hut all the next day, during which time my kind benefactress visited me, and endeavoured, by a thousand means, to cheer my spirits; her kindness was truly disinterested, as I had but very little acquaintance with her, and brought to my mind that interesting occurrence which is related by Mr. Park in his Travels through the interior of Africa, the leading circumstances of which are so beautifully versified by the Duchess of Devonshire:

"The loud wind roared, the rain fell fast,
The white man yielded to the blast;
He sat him down beneath our tree,
For weary, sad and faint was he.

CHORUS.

The white man shall our pity share;
Alas! no wife or mother's care
For him the milk or corn prepare.

The wind is heard in whispers low,
The white man far away must go,
But ever in his mind will bear
Remembrance of the negro's care.

CHORUS.

The white man shall our pity share;
Alas! no wife or mother's care
For him the corn or milk prepare."

In the evening two of the brothers of my benefactress came to the hut, ready to conduct me on my journey. My horses having been brought up by Edom, and all things being in readiness, we started as soon as the moon arose. They conducted me a considerable distance on my way, and when they were ready to leave me I made them presents of beads and some other articles, with which they were highly satisfied.

I now determined to steer a west southwesterly course, as I wished to reach the confines of Mexico, from which I was still a considerable distance. It was now the 12th of October, and I calculated it would take me at least two months to reach the place of my destination, as in many places the ways were almost impassable.

Before I proceed I will give a more particular account of the Mnacedeus Indians than I have hitherto done: the country they inhabit is situated about 350 miles southeast from Mexico; the extent of their tribe I was never able to ascertain, which was partly owing to my ignorance of their language, and partly to a jealousy which they have imbibed against all strangers. That part of

variety of others which I did not particularly notice. The lofty magnolia rears its magnificent head far above all others; it is the most beautiful tree which grows, and is deservedly celebrated by travellers and naturalists.

These Indians have two towns which I saw, one containing about 150 huts, and the other about twice that number. The huts are constructed in a neater manner than any I had before seen; they consist of poles driven into the ground a proper distance, in proportion to the size of the hut; these are fastened at the top with strong thongs of buffalo hide, or twigs of trees; they are then interlaced with strips of bark, which are rubbed smooth, and some of them stained with the juice of berries, which gives them a very neat appearance. They have a raised bench of earth all around their huts, on which they sleep at night. Their cooking utensils are few in number, as they dry the principal part of their provisions in the air.

Their arms, marriages, burials, &c. I have already described, and shall therefore conclude with a few observations on the tribe in general. They are honest, and as far as the nature of a savage life will admit, are industrious; their dispositions are naturally mild, and on the whole they are far from being so savage as many tribes who are situated on the borders of the Red river. They are jealous of admitting white men among them, although I have reason to think they have been visited by very few; their jealousy is principally on account of their mine of platina, which is encouraged by the white man who is settled among them.

Platina is a metal which has been but recently discov

for the veins are so rich, that without any proper tools, I got more than a hundred and twenty pounds of pure metal, in the three visits I made to the mine; and that under every disadvantage, and without remaining more than an hour each time.

America, from the infancy of its settlement, has been under the necessity of drawing a vast quantity of her necessary articles from the different European countries. Mines which would have yielded us a rich and profitable traffic, or the means of establishing manufactories, have been little attended to. It is hoped, however, that the encouragement of our government will be afforded to discoveries of this kind, and enable us to retain those large sums which are annually expended for articles which from long use are deemed necessary.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Author pursues his journey—General observations on the country—Large quantities of musquetoes—Some account of the soil—Meet a party of Indians—Accompany them to their village—Description of it—Description of their huts—Superiority of their trade to that of the Mnacedeus—-Excellent horses-—Reflections on the benefits arising from agriculture and civilization—Author pursues his journey—Description of odoriferous shrubs and trees found on the mountains—Edom taken sick—Delay in our journey—Recovery—Proceed on our journey.*

OCTOBER, 1812. I proceeded on my journey with a light heart, for the imminent danger which I had escaped softened the disappointment I at first suffered from the discovery which took place relative to the mine of platina, and I now congratulated myself that I was in the land of the living.

I had gained nothing to recompense me for the detention on my journey; on the contrary, I was considerable out of pocket from the different presents I had made the chiefs and others;—but still, that spirit of adventure which had first induced me to travel—that wish to aggrandize myself, had not yet abated; I still went forward, with an earnest wish to encounter something which would amply reward me for all my trouble and disap-

me over that part of the mountain which lies to the south southwest of the Mnacedeus tribe. As I occasionally ascended a hill, a fine extensive prospect opened to view. Large prairies, bounded on each side by forests, whose towering trees, nodding before the passing wind, added beauty and grandeur to the scene. I had occasionally a distant view of the lofty Andes, whose tops are perpetually "clad in clouds." This view is one of the most beautiful and romantic in this part of the country.

After travelling about twenty-five miles, we encamped for the night. The musquetoes were very thick, and so large that I was obliged to use my netting in order to get any sleep.

In the morning I pursued my journey, and about ten o'clock we came to a pond, in which were a species of duck, one of which I shot and found it very good eating. We likewise found plenty of roots which serve the natives for food, and resolved to try the experiment of boiling some of them in my kettle; they answered very well, being almost equal to a potatoe. This root is long, and about as large as a common sized radish; it has a tough skin of a light brown colour, which is easily scraped off. There are a variety of roots which are fit for food in this country; but as the country abounds in all kinds of animal food, they are not much eaten by the natives.

Towards evening we had a severe shower of rain, which rendered it necessary for me to encamp, and as it was

however, that there is no rain here for several months, but at such seasons the dews are very heavy.

For three or four days I journeyed through a country much like that which I have been describing, and for that reason I shall avoid particularizing each day's route, as it might be tiresome to the reader. The soil of that part of the country through which I now passed was of a clayey kind, intermixed with small round stones, and a few shells, which upon examination I found very similar to our common cockle shell, only something flatter. As this was more than 1700 miles from the sea, it is a matter of much curiosity how shells of that description came there.

On the morning of the fifth day, after travelling about ten miles, we were suddenly surrounded by about forty Indians, of a tribe I had never before seen. They were armed with bows, arrows, and a kind of tomahawk, made of copper, which was suspended in a belt fastened round their waist. They approached me with caution, and asked me from whence I came. I informed them by signs, and likewise where I was going. They then invited me to their town, which they gave me to understand was at no great distance, and just on the route I wished to pursue. I accordingly accepted of their invitation, and in a few minutes they were mounted on horses and ready to proceed.

They informed me they had been out for the purpose of hunting, and breaking their horses, of which they have great numbers, and of a colour peculiarly valuable; they are of a bright cream colour, very large and well made.

them, they told me they would not part with them unless I could pay them in silver; and I afterwards understood that they traded with the Spaniards, who came every year to purchase of them, and took away all they could spare. I afterwards saw some of the same horses in Mexico, where they were held in high estimation.

On my arrival at their village, which was situated about five miles from where I first saw them, I was met by all the women and children which were in the village; they appeared to be healthy, and received me with great good humour. I was conducted to their chief, who was an old man, apparently about seventy years of age. He was strong and vigorous, and appeared to possess more strength and sprightliness than is usual at that age.

The village consisted of about sixty huts, and probably contained one hundred and sixty persons. The tribe, as I understood, was called the Obodeus. The men were for the most part well built, strong, and hardy looking; the women were smaller than those of the Mnacedeus tribe, and appeared to possess more sprightliness and vivacity. Most of the labour falls upon the women, such as making utensils for cooking, and snares for catching birds, drying meat, and various other kinds of drudgery; whilst the men prepare their arms, hunt, and go to war. They evidently consider their wives more in the light of slaves than companions, as the husband at his meals not only helps himself, but all his children and whoever he may have to eat with him, before he allows his wife to take any.

Their huts are constructed something similar to those

Many of their huts are much larger than any I saw among the Mnacedeus, and in the large square instead of a stage they have four poles erected, which have a covering of buffalo hide on the top.

In traffic these Indians are much superior to the Mnacedeus tribe, as there is an annual communication between them and the Mexicans, who barter with them for furs of various kinds, buffalo meat, and horses, and give in exchange knives, beads, tomahawks, made of copper, which are very hard and preferred by the natives to iron, some pieces of cloth, and a liquor much esteemed among them, called mate, which, when drank to excess, is very injurious to the constitution, bringing on nervous diseases, which in a short time terminate the life of the natives.

After remaining here a few days I succeeded in making an advantageous exchange with the natives for two of their fine horses, and proceeded on my journey. The violence of the heat had in some degree abated, and I was much afraid the rainy season would set in before I could reach the confines of the Mexican empire; but it was necessary that I should travel in such a manner as not to wear down my horses before I reached the end of my journey, and on that account I never exceeded thirty-five miles in a day during the whole of my tour.

In travelling over some of the most fertile parts of this country, I have seen much to admire and much to lament. The richness of the soil, and the mildness of the climate, are inviting to every one, and we cannot but admire the magnificent hand which has so plentifully strewed this fine country with some of the richest of nature's gifts; yet, on the other hand, we cannot but lament that

an extent of territory for their support which is capable, under cultivation, of supplying five times the number of inhabitants with all the necessaries, and many of the luxuries of life. The tribes who now inhabit this country are undoubtedly its aboriginal inhabitants, and may with propriety argue, that that BEING who spake unnumbered worlds into existence placed them here, and that they have a right to a residence till he calls them hence. But this would be contrary to that wisdom which is uniform in the works of the Almighty, and therefore, as soon as the country was known to us, it became our duty, as a nation, to endeavour to instil into the minds of its inhabitants the seeds of virtue, and so far instruct them in the art of agriculture as to enable them to support themselves with comfort on a much smaller space of territory. If we succeeded in these benevolent objects, we should see millions of happy beings living on the same extent of country which now supports only a few thousands, and enjoying every thing which is necessary to render the life of man agreeable.

I now travelled with as much rapidity as the roads would allow, which were for the most part through rich and entensive prairies, clothed with a long grass that rendered the travelling in many places heavy and unpleasant.

On the 6th of November I began to ascend the mountains, over which it was necessary to pass, and found them in many places steep and difficult of ascent. On these mountains are many trees which are worthy of no-

to the celebrated balsam of Mecca; it is of a reddish black or yellowish white colour, of a sharp, bitter taste, and of a strong but most grateful odour. The first parcel of this balsam brought from Mexico to Rome was sold at one hundred ducats per ounce, and was, by the Apostolic See, declared to be matter fit for chrism, though different from that of Mecca." I saw another tree whose wood was highly aromatic, and so hard that it was with great difficulty I cut it with a sharp hatchet; the leaves are small and of a yellowish cast, the flowers small and white, and the fruit very similar to that of the laurel.

Edom had hitherto enjoyed perfect health through all the fatigues and perils which he had endured, one short period of illness excepted. He never once complained, or murmured at his lot. His constitution was strong and robust, and he seemed formed by nature to endure hardships. He had now for some days been visibly growing ill, and although he had not absolutely complained, his looks were sufficient to convince me he was far from being well: this evening he uttered a slight complaint, but would not consent to take any medicine.

In the morning I found Edom so unwell as to be scarcely able to stir. I was much alarmed at his situation, and endeavoured to afford him such kind of assistance as would be of service in relieving his malady. With some difficulty I succeeded in getting him into a profuse perspiration, and he slept soundly the following night. The next morning he seemed to be much better,

somewhat better, and expressed a strong desire to proceed, although it should be but slowly, and only a short distance; we accordingly got up our horses, and proceeded over steep and rugged parts of the mountain. The passage was rendered difficult by many craggy points of rocks, which were very sharp and dangerous. We had now arrived in that part where I expected to meet with Spaniards or other Europeans, who would be able to give me information of the rout I must take to enter the province of the Otomies, through the principal towns of which I intended to proceed until I reached Mexico.

The next day, after proceeding some miles on my journey, I met a trader who had been out buying furs; he was a Portuguese, but spoke the Spanish language with fluency. He informed me that I must steer more to the south, and that I was distant about two days' journey. He also said that the provinces were in a state of insurrection, in consequence of the oppressive measures of the Spanish government, which required more from the people than they were able to endure. He however said, that he believed a stranger might pass unmolested among them, if they had no suspicion of his acting under the orders of the Spanish government, of which they were very jealous.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Author enters the Mexican empire—General account of the province of Tula—Description of the town of Tula—Politeness of the commandant—Visits the arsenal—Description of it—Description of the court house—Author visits a monastery—Friendly reception from the superior—Description of its chapel—Return to town—Set out for Xilotepec—Information respecting the interior provinces of the Mexican empire—Arrival at Xilotepec.*

On the 26th of November I entered the confines of the Mexican empire, within about twenty miles of Tula, which was once much larger and more populous than at present. I proceeded by easy journeys, and encamped for the night in a fertile plain which was covered with a rich luxuriant grass. The climate is very mild, and it would have been unnecessary for me to use any covering at night, but for the heavy dews, which here constantly set in at sunset, and continue until daylight; they are so great, that for a considerable time after the sun is risen, it is obscured with the mist which arises from the earth.

In the morning I again set forward, and after proceeding through a country agreeably diversified with hills and vallies I came in sight of Tula, and in about two hours more I arrived within the town. I was much pleased

Spaniards who reside here, are principally the officers of government, and those whom the desire of gain has drawn hither for the purpose of traffic. The town, nevertheless, has a very neat and compact appearance, and is well regulated in many of its internal arrangements. The inhabitants are industrious, and appear to be happy and contented; for such is the nature of man, that oppression oftentimes so far weakens the powers of the mind, that he stoops contentedly under the burden, and tamely submits to the greatest indignities without repining.

On my arrival at the town I waited on the commandant, who informed me that there were mules which would set out for Xilotepec in a few days, and I could have an opportunity of going on with company, which would be more agreeable than to go alone, and would at the same time be a safeguard against the wild beasts, and other dangers which are common on the road; I thanked him for his civility. He invited me to dinner, and I could not with propriety refuse. I found him a very hospitable and intelligent man. His family consisted of his wife and three daughters, the youngest of whom appeared to be about seventeen years of age. They were delicately made; their complexions were a light olive, which rendered them very interesting. They received me with much good humour, and during the whole time I was with them, they were remarkably cheerful and animated. They expressed themselves with elegance, and a degree of information pervaded their conversation which is not often found in the discourses of Spanish ladies.

but I am confident there was not half this number when I was there.

The arsenal is a large quadrangular building, built of brick. The arms are a great part of them packed in chests, and the remainder are put up in racks which stand against the side of the wall. The building is divided into four apartments. The first is a large room, about 125 feet in length and 17 in breadth, in which are ranged all the arms that are fit for service; the chests which contain part of them are placed on each side, immediately under the racks which contain those that are exposed to view; they are all bright and make a handsome appearance, although their locks are so badly constructed that not one in ten can be depended on. In the next room, which is much smaller, are all the accoutrements, such as cartridge-boxes, bayonets, &c.; they are all piled in a heap, so that they require overhauling once or twice a month to keep them from mildew, and from rats and other vermin which infest the place. I ventured to suggest to the commandant that it would be well to adopt a more rigorous policy; he shrugged up his shoulders, and replied that it would be imprudent to adopt any new plans relative to the arsenal, as the people were jealous of the government, and would view it as an infringement of their rights. In the third room are the materials proper for mining, raising fortifications, &c.; they are well constructed, and in better order than might be expected. We passed other rooms, in which were a number of workmen cleaning and repairing locks, gunbarrels, &c. In the yard there were about ninety pieces of

which hands were employed in making ramrods, gun-barrels, and other articles for the arsenal.

On my return I took leave of the commandant and his agreeable family, and returned to my lodgings, where I found Edom who had been out purchasing some necessary clothing, as his journey had completely divested him of all his apparel, and he had for some time been obliged to wear a pair of pantaloons made of deer skin. His appearance was much altered for the better, and he seemed to be not a little proud of it.

The town of *Tula* is well situated, and commands a handsome and extensive prospect, being situated on a hill which rises from a rich and extensive valley in a gradual and easy ascent; it is well built, and contains about 2,700 houses, and a population of near 14,000 souls. The streets are many of them wide and paved, and where that is not the case the sides are covered with mats for foot passengers to walk on. There are nine Roman Catholic churches in the town, two of which are large and well built, of brick which are dried in the sun. In one of them, called the church of St. Dominic, is a figure of our Saviour on the cross, of solid silver, and the cross is richly studded with precious stones. They have a very excellent toned organ, but are in want of some one who understands playing on it.

The court house, in which all the public business is done, has nothing to recommend it to the attention of the traveller. It is built of brick and stone, and contains the hall of justice, in which all the criminal and other causes are tried—the audience chamber of the province, where they meet to adjust the concerns of the province, inquire

nue of the country, and the sums which are annually sent to Mexico, amounting in all to about 90,000 pounds sterling.

Over the river Taltacasae, which runs at the foot of the town, there is a bridge constructed; it has three arches, one of which is 126 feet, and is a handsome and well built bridge.

This city, or town, is the see of an archbishop; it carries on a considerable trade with the towns of Xilotepec and Mexico. The articles of trade are conveyed on the backs of mules, and they sometimes go in companies of five or six hundred. The police of the town subjects all travellers to the trouble of waiting on the commandant within three days after their arrival, or they must suffer the penalty of a fine.

I was now informed by the commandant, that the caravan with which I intended setting out, would start on that day week, and I immediately commenced making such preparations as would enable me to go with them, as it would not only be the safest, but the quickest way in which I could travel.

I had understood that there was a monastery of native Mexicans situated a few leagues from the town, and I requested the commandant to give me leave to go and see them; he very readily consented, and agreed to accompany me himself, but unexpected business the next morning rendered it impossible, and he sent his brother, a young man of much information, and from whom I received many valuable particulars.

of about a quarter of a mile in extent, to breakfast, and here the eye was regaled with a prospect truly romantic. Just below us appeared the town, whose spires rising in lofty magnificence seemed to tell us that there stood the temple of God, while a little further on the winding of the river, which was here but partially seen, gave an interesting feature to the whole landscape.

After viewing this prospect for some time, we proceeded on our journey, and about noon reached the monastery. It is situated on a level plain of about a mile in extent, from which the mountain rises in an abrupt manner, and shelters it behind from the north wind, while to the south and west it is entirely open. A thick grove of trees at no great distance from the house, gave a sober cast to the whole scenery, and cooled the air with their gentle fannings.

On our approaching the house we were met by an old man, who saluted us with a friendly bow, and welcomed us to the habitation. He entered into conversation with ease, and displayed much knowledge of the country which he inhabited; I understood he had once been in a considerable employment under the government. On entering the house we perceived the greatest regularity and neatness, and were every where saluted by the monks with cordiality and frankness. The old man led us to the refectory, where we were received by the superior, a man about seventy-five years of age, as I was afterwards told, although his brow was free from wrinkles, and he had a freshness in his countenance which would have

breakfast, for receiving visitors, &c.; a large hall, which is made use of as a dining room, and a room in which Divine service is performed when the superior is unwell, whose room opens into it. The rooms are all simple in their construction, being hung either with black or blue cloth. The only furniture made use of is a few rush-bottomed chairs, and stools to pray upon.

If the interior apartments which are used by the monks are simply furnished, the inside of the church makes ample amends, by the elegance and splendour of its decorations, which are profusely scattered over every part of it. It is a large and spacious room; the gallery is supported by marble pillars, which are very fine, and brought from a quarry at some distance. Nearly in the centre is an elegant reading desk, from which the monks hear a discourse every Sunday; it is of marble which has an exquisitely smooth polish, and is supported by angels of solid silver with trumpets in their hands, representing the four winds. But the altar is superior to any thing I had ever seen in Europe; it was of massive silver, and the railing enclosed a space of about thirty-six feet. In the centre stood a table covered with a cloth of gold, on which was placed a box inlaid with precious stones, containing the oil for extreme unction and the sacramental bread. Over the altar is a figure of the Virgin Mary dressed in a most superb manner, her robe being of cloth of gold, and richly studded with diamonds and pearls; on her head is a crown of jewels, which is very rich, and worth at least 10,000 pounds. In the niches are figures of the Apostles, dressed in rich robes of blue and green

On returning to the refectory we found a cold collation, which had been prepared for us by the orders of the superior, who was very polite to us during the whole of our stay. When we had eaten a slight repast, we mounted our horses and set forward for town, where we arrived about dark, and I retired to my lodgings much pleased with my excursion.

In the morning I visited some of the shops, which are kept with great neatness, and make a very handsome show. They are principally stocked with light articles, which are brought by the convoys from Europe, such as silks, muslins, nankeens, &c. which are all of the first quality, and sold very cheap. I received information from the commandant that the caravan would start at night about twelve o'clock, accompanied by a request that I would spend the afternoon with him. I ordered Edom to get things in readiness to start, and proceeded to the commandant's house, where I was well entertained until the hour came for my departure, when I bade my friends an affectionate adieu and left them.

We met with nothing remarkable during the first day's travel, and encamped for the night in a rich and extensive meadow, which furnished ample pasturage for our horses and mules, whilst a stream of water refreshed us with a cooling draught. In the morning we proceeded, and about noon passed through the small town of Tzompanco, which contains about 90 houses and 250 inhabitants; here is a church, which is built of brick dried in

posed our cavalcade: I found them of a mixed kind, some Spaniards, some Mexicans, and a few of the mixed breed. The principal part of them were going on for the purpose of trading, and had either horses or merchandize proper for trafficking.

Among my fellow travellers there was one who was an Italian by birth, but had been some years in this country. His information was very extensive, and he had travelled in various directions over the country. He informed me that the soil was fruitful, producing Indian corn, wheat, and many other kinds of grain, in abundance; the native fruits he said were so plenty, that the inhabitants were not under the necessity of cultivating them. Many of the provinces through which he had travelled had the appearance of great wealth; and the furniture and decorations of many of the houses were costly and magnificent. He likewise informed me he had visited a tribe of Indians called the Apaches, which he represented as a brave, warlike, resolute people, fond of liberty, and the inveterate enemies of tyranny and oppression. They had lately thought themselves aggrieved, and had been very troublesome to the Spanish government; they had done much mischief before they submitted, but were now curbed by strong garrisons. He informed me that when the Spaniards first went among these Indians, they found them well clothed, their lands cultivated, their villages neat, and their houses built with stone; their flocks were also numerous, and they lived more comfortably than most of the other savages; as to their religion they were idolaters,

Towards evening we arrived at a small village called Huoxacac, where we remained all night. The village is small, but well built; it contains about fifty houses, the most of which are built of brick or clay, and not more than two or three of them over one story high.

In the morning we again started, and calculated by evening to reach the city of Xilotepec. We this day passed a number of small villages, in which nothing worthy of notice was observed, and I shall therefore avoid particularizing until our arrival at the city of Xilotepec, which we reached about the middle of the afternoon. On our arrival I immediately waited on a person to whom I had a letter from the commandant of Tula, and he directly procured me lodgings in a pleasant and airy part of the town.

---

## CHAP. XX.

*Particular description of the city of Xilotepec—Religion—Government—Commerce—Excellence of the markets—Description of the hall of audience—Preparations for leaving this place for Mexico—Description of a natural bridge, similar to that in Virginia described by Mr. Jefferson—Description of a cave—Description of the country through which the author passes—Arrival at Mexico.*

mend it to the attention of travellers. The streets are straight and regular, the principal terminating in three large squares, in which are fountains that supply the city with water the year round. These streets are lined with shops which make a very showy appearance, and do considerable business. The churches are numerous, and the cathedral is a very fine piece of architecture, built of stone, and of an ancient date; the inside is very rich in its ornaments, but they are heavy and deficient in that elegance which would recommend them to the attention of the connoisseur.

The government is here administered altogether by the Spaniards, who monopolize all the most profitable branches of trade, and let it to the natives at a high price; in their dealings they are not very honourable, and they never hesitate to take in a stranger. The principal trade is carried on with Mexico and Acapulco, the one being the capital of the country, and the other the seaport through which the communication is kept up between the different parts of the Spanish empire in America, and the East Indies. The commerce from Xilotepec to Acapulco must arrive at the latter place before the month of December, at which time the Great Galleon, attended by a large ship as a convoy, which forms the only communication between the Philippines and Mexico, annually arrives there. The cargoes of these ships, although they are forbidden to carry goods, consist of all the rich commodities of the east. The annual ship from Lima arrives about the same time, and is generally supposed to have on board about two millions of pieces of eight in silver

Several other ships from different parts of the Spanish coast likewise arrive at this time, and an annual fair which lasts thirty days is held, when all the commodities of the world are bartered. This city, next to Mexico, has the largest share in this traffic, and it is said that in some seasons there has been 10,000 mules sent over, laden with the produce of the country. The trade with Mexico is less advantageous, and does not employ more than half as many mules.

Near Xilotepec there is a beautiful river, which runs from southeast to northwest, and waters a considerable extent of territory. In this river are found small grains of gold, which are washed from the mountains; a great number of the poor inhabitants are employed in collecting this gold, who sometimes find considerable quantities.

The Spaniards work a mine of copper which is situated about a mile from the town, in which they employ their slaves, and those who are sentenced by the court for small crimes. This mine is not very productive, although it has been worked to the depth of about 120 feet.

I waited on an American gentleman of the name of Lacour, whom I had known in New-Orleans. He had recently arrived from Mexico, and informed me that there were some considerable disturbances in the city between the Spanish governor and the people, but nevertheless he considered the city safe for foreigners, particularly for Americans. He informed me that trade was very brisk in that city, and that it was hardly possible for me to fail of finding a ready market for my two horses.

offers for them, which I refused, determining not to sell till I reached Mexico, where I should be able to purchase mules much cheaper than here.

This city is the see of an archbishop, who has an income of about six thousand pounds sterling. He is a Spaniard, of the order of Jesuits, and has been in the country about ten years. The inhabitants are very much attached to him, and they never pass him without taking off their hats.

The markets of this city are excellent, and deserving of high commendation. There are three of them kept in streets near the large squares which have been already mentioned, one half of each of which is appropriated to flesh, and the other half to fish and vegetables. Eggs, butter, cheese, &c. of a good quality, may be bought here very cheap. The regulations of the market will not allow a person to dispose of any article before daylight, nor to stay in the market after 12 o'clock, as the heat is then such that the provisions might be injured. There is an appearance of regularity in their dealings, which renders it probable that they have been accustomed to these regulations for some time.

There are a few vineyards in the neighbourhood that produce a considerable quantity of grapes, from which a pleasant wine is made. It is my opinion that if the culture of the grape was duly attended to, in a short time a large quantity of wine might be exported from this country; but the indolence of the inhabitants is such

the principal deputies of the province meet to render an account of their proceedings. The deputies are received by the chief clerk of the viceroy of Mexico. This is a spacious and elegant apartment, capable of holding one thousand persons. The room is fourteen feet high, and the ceiling covered with Spanish and Mexican banners. At the upper end of the hall is a chair raised on a throne of marble, which has an exquisite polish; the chair is richly covered with a cloth of silver, and studded all over with gold nails. Over the chair is a canopy of purple velvet, which is deeply fringed with gold tissue. The seats on which the deputies sit are covered with red velvet. Behind the chair is the figure of the Virgin Mary in a rich gilt frame, which is the only picture in the chamber. In the centre of the room is a chandelier which has sixteen branches. The Spanish gentleman informed me that the deputies meet here only once in a year, when they remain about three weeks, and that the rest of the time the hall is shut up, and never opened except upon particular request.

For some days past I had been making arrangements to leave this place for Mexico. I called on the gentleman to whom I had a letter from the commandant of Tula, and requested him to inform me of any one who was going on in a few days, as it would be more agreeable to travel with company than alone. He assured me he would enquire, and did not doubt there were some going on who would be glad of receiving an addition to their cavalcade.

My horses were by this time in excellent order and

pointed, as on my arrival I sold them to a Spanish grandee at my own price.

In a few days my friend called on me; he informed me that in three days there would be four gentlemen going on to Mexico, who would be very glad of my company, and with whom he had no doubt I should pass the time very agreeably. He mentioned that he was now going into the country, near to some remarkable natural curiosities which would be worthy my attention, and he requested me to accompany him. As I had nothing particular to detain me in town I accepted of his invitation, and we prepared to start the next morning.

In the morning we started on mules, and proceeded directly to the mountains. The road was steep, and in many parts dangerous, owing to the pieces of rocks which had been broken off and lay in the path. We saw nothing remarkable for the first day's journey, and put up about dark at the hut of a cowherd, who entertained us very hospitably. Being fatigued with our journey we soon retired to rest, and slept soundly until morning.

At the dawn of day we again started, and proceeded over steep and craggy cliffs, which were very sharp and difficult of being passed. My friend informed me that we were near to one of the most stupendous curiosities in that country, a view of which he considered worthy of the trouble and fatigue we had encountered in coming to it. In a few minutes more, on rising a high part of the mountain, I discovered a natural bridge, extending

between this bridge and the one described by Mr. Jefferson, in his Notes on Virginia, and which I had so often admired. It appeared to me to be as wide at the bottom as at the top, but the sublime appearance of it was equal to the one seen in Virginia. In the centre of the bridge is a large rock which acts as a pier, reaching from the top to the bottom. I understood the bridge was often crossed by the mountaineers, in pursuit of their stray sheep, but I could not muster up resolution enough to venture. My companion now led me to the bottom of the bridge, where the view was as delightful as that from the top had been painful and terrific. The hills, clothed with a few trees, and the blue sky, which can here but partially be seen, renders the scene one of the most pleasing and beautiful I ever saw.

We now passed on for about a mile, when my companion turned off to the right, and in a few minutes led me to the mouth of a cave situated in the side of the mountain. The entrance was much choaked with weeds, and appeared not to have been entered for some time. It is in the steepest side of the mountain, and is very difficult of access. We, however, succeeded in forcing our way, being provided with torches, from fireworks which we had brought with us.

On entering the cave, we found the thermometer which stood at 70° rise in a few minutes to 76°. We continued nearly in a horizontal direction, and found that it branched out into many subordinate caverns, some much

while that which trickled from above formed stalactites of a conical form, which had a handsome appearance.

We proceeded slowly forward until we had reached the distance of about 400 feet from the mouth of the cave, when we came to a small pond of water which was about ten yards in circumference. I threw a stone into this pond, which produced a rumbling noise throughout the cavern. As our light was nearly extinguished, and we could not with safety proceed any further, we returned with all speed. When we arrived at the mouth of the cave we found the sun far past the meridian, and hastened to return to the hut of the hospitable cowherd, who entertained us the night before. On our return he prepared for us a comfortable bed, and in the morning we again set forward, and reached town early in the afternoon.

The next morning I was called upon by one of my fellow travellers, who informed me that they would call for me in the afternoon. I expressed myself entirely satisfied, and about three o'clock we set out on our journey. We travelled this day through a beautiful country, which was well watered and very fertile. I saw many large herds of cattle, which are here fed by the natives and fitted for the Mexican market. At the time this country was discovered it produced neither hogs, sheep, cattle, nor any other domestic animal. Columbus carried some of these animals to St. Domingo, from whence they were brought to Mexico, where they have multiplied prodigiously. They now count their horned cattle by

were regaled with the music of the birds until a late hour, when I sunk in sleep. The next morning we pursued our journey. We passed through several small villages which were seated on the sides of the mountain, and about noon arrived at the handsome town of Chiomporazo, which is well built, and contains many handsome houses; it has a population of about six thousand persons. The streets are crooked and narrow, which gives the place a disadvantageous appearance. The inhabitants are industrious, and carry on a considerable manufacture of silk, although they are not much encouraged by the government, which is jealous of this manufacture, and for some political reasons throw many obstructions in the way of it.

We remained here all night, and in the morning proceeded. The roads now became more level, and we travelled with much more ease than formerly. This being the great road to Mexico, it is kept with more care and better regulation than any other in New-Spain. Each traveller has to pay a small toll as he passes, at the distance of about ten leagues.

We met with nothing remarkable, or worthy of notice, until we arrived at the small town of Lasca, which is situated on the side of a hill, and is a pleasant and thriving little town. The inhabitants are about 700 in number, and manufacture baize in some considerable quantity. They have large flocks of sheep, which graze on the mountains; but their wool is much coarser than that of our northern sheep, which is, however, the case in all

About noon the next day I had an agreeable view of the lake Tetzuco, on an island in which stands the city of Mexico. It has of late undergone some considerable improvements, which are much for the benefit of the city; a canal has been dug, which drains the lower lake, and secures the city from those inundations which were so frequent, owing to the lake being the reservoir of all the water which flows from the different mountains. The appearance of the city was grand and magnificent, it being almost entirely surrounded with water, and the lofty spires of its churches, glittering in the sun, rendered the sight truly pleasing. As we descended the mountain we lost sight of the city. Our road was now winding through a valley, which was rendered gay by the vineyards, houses for pleasure and amusement, cottages, &c. which were scattered over the scene, and so agreeably employed us that we did not reach the city before it became dark.

## CHAP. XXI.

*General description of Mexico—Extent—Population—Elegance of its churches—Description of the church of St. Antonio—Elegance of the buildings—Commerce of Mexico—General account of its inhabitants.*

On my arrival in Mexico [illegible]

myself as much at home as though I had been brought up there. I found the city far to exceed any thing I had conceived of its grandeur and magnificence. The buildings were lofty, and the architecture of many of them executed in a manner that leaves them very little inferior to any in Europe. The streets are regular and well laid out. There are nineteen public squares, which are spacious and have fountains of water in their centre. Around these squares are placed shops, coffee-houses, and billiard-rooms, which render them the resort of the most fashionable and wealthy part of the inhabitants. One of these billiard-rooms is so large that it can accommodate two hundred people with ease, and has twelve billiard-tables. The coffee-houses are the places to which the Spaniards resort after dinner, to drink coffee, punch, &c.: they have become very numerous in Mexico.

The exact circumference of the city I cannot give with precision, as authors differ much in their accounts, and Spaniards and Mexicans never agree in that particular at the present day; but I am induced to believe that it is about ten miles in circumference, and that it contains about 250,000 inhabitants.

The Abbe Clavegero, in his History of Mexico, dates the foundation of the this city as far back as 1325. It was the residence of the kings of the Mexican empire from its foundation, and upon the first arrival of the Spaniards in this country they were much surprised at the neatness and regularity of its appearance, and the magnificence of its buildings. It has suffered greatly in the different struggles which have been made by the

Some of the churches are built with surprising neatness and regularity, and the inside work is not only extremely rich, but elegant. The church of St. Antonio is deserving of particular notice. It stands in the square of the same name; its front is supported by twelve large pillars of beautiful marble of the corinthian order, with tonic capitals. The church is entirely of white marble. Directly over the portico is a figure of St. Anthony, the patron saint, dressed in a superb manner, and having in his hand a cross set with diamonds; it is asserted by the monks that they are real diamonds, but others, with some authority, say that they are nothing but false ones made of glass.

The inside of the church is adorned with a number of superb columns of marble, some of the tonic and some of the corinthian order, and all having their bases richly gilt. The ceiling is painted in a very neat and handsome manner, representing some of the most interesting scenes in the history of our Saviour; the paintings are said to have been executed by a native Mexican who had never studied the art; they are by no means a contemptible performance.

The altar is very rich and splendid, and far surpasses that of the court chapel in Madrid, which is said to have cost eighty thousand pounds sterling; the railing is of solid silver, about forty feet in length, forming an exact half moon; at each end is an angel as large as life, of silver; in the centre is a chandelier with twelve branches, which is supported by the angels. The entrance into the altar is by a gate, made in the form of a cross, with a

When I saw it, high mass was performed by the archbishop, with great magnificence; the robes in which he was dressed on that occasion were very rich and costly, and the number of monks who composed the procession amounted to about two hundred. The lights which were then burning in golden candlesticks, reached to the height of twenty feet, and formed an exact triangle; they had a beautiful and elegant appearance.

The greatest curiosity in the city of Mexico is the floating gardens, which are particularly described by the Abbe Clavegero. Their origin is dated as far back as the year 1325, when the Mexicans were subdued by the Columan and Tepecan nations. Their construction is simple, and they are thus described by Clavegero. "They take willows and the roots of marsh plants, and other materials which are light, and twist them together, and so firmly unite them as to form a sort of platform which is capable of supporting the earth of the garden. Upon this foundation they lay the light bushes which float on the lake, and overspread the mud and dirt which they draw up from the bottom of the lake. Their regular figure is quadrangular; their length and breadth various, but generally about eight rods long and three wide; and their elevation from the surface of the water is less than a foot. These were the first fields which the Mexicans owned after the foundation of Mexico; there they first cultivated the maize, great pepper, and other plants necessary for their support. At present they cultivate nothing but garden herbs and flowers. Every day of the year, at sunrise, innumerable vessels or boats, loaded

market place of Mexico. All plants thrive here surprisingly; the mud of the lake makes a very rich soil, which requires no water from the clouds. In the largest gardens there is commonly a little tree and a little hut to shelter the cultivator from the sun. When the owner of a garden, or the chimaka, as he is called, wishes to change his situation, to get out of a bad neighbourhood, or to come nearer his family, he gets into his little boat, and by his own strength alone, if the garden is small, or with the assistance of others if it is large, conducts it wherever he pleases, with the little hut and tree upon it."

The buildings of Mexico are mostly of stone, and are very airy and elegant. Many of those which are of modern date are very high. The archiepiscopal palace, which has been lately erected, is six stories high, and built of white stone resembling marble.

The trade of Mexico consists of three great branches, which extend over the whole world. It carries on a traffic with Europe by Le Vera Cruz, which is situated on the gulf of Mexico, on the North sea, and is styled by some the grand port of Mexico or New-Spain; it is said to have a safe harbour, and is considered one of the most considerable places of trade, being the centre of the American treasure, and the magazine for all the merchandize sent from New-Spain, or that is transported thither from Europe. It is by means of this port that

ships, annually arrive about the beginning of November. Its cargo consists of almost every commodity and manufacture of Europe; and there are few nations but have more concern in it than the Spanish, who send out little except wine and oil.

Notwithstanding what has been said respecting the cities of Acapulco and Vera Cruz, the city of Mexico ought to be considered as the centre of commerce in this part of the world; for here the principal merchants reside, and the greatest part of the business is negociated. The East India goods from Acapulco, and the European from Vera Cruz, pass through this city. Hither also, the gold and silver are sent to be coined; here the king's fifth is deposited, and here are wrought all those utensils and ornaments in plate, which are every year sent into Europe.

The principal inhabitants of the city of Mexico are Spaniards, who are obliged to aspire to some ecclesiastical, civil, or military employment, to prove that there have been neither heretics, Jews, Mahometans, nor any persons, in their family, who have been called before the inquisition for four generations.

Merchants, who are desirous of going to Mexico, as well as to other parts of Spanish America, without becoming colonists, are compelled to observe the same forms; they are also obliged to swear that they have three hundred palms of merchandise, their own property, in the fleet in which they embark, and that they will not take their wives with them. On these conditions they

more remote, it is of great importance. To them alone belong the right of selling, as commissioners, the major part of the cargo.

There are, however, a large class of men who are excluded from all public stations, and are called Creoles. The descendants of the companions of Cortez, having been constantly excluded from all places of trust that were in any degree considerable, have seen the gradual decay of the power that supported their fathers. The habit of bearing that contempt with which they have been treated, has at last made them become really contemptible. They have totally lost, in the vices which originate from the heat of the climate, from indolence, and from a superfluous enjoyment of all things, that firmness and that sort of pride which have ever characterized their nation. Luxury, shameful pleasures and intrigues, have enervated all the vigour of their minds, while a blind superstition has completed their degradation. Being blindly devoted to priests who are too ignorant to enlighten them by their instructions, too depraved to edify them by their example, and too mercenary to attend to both these duties of their functions, they have no attachment to any part of their religion but that which enfeebles the mind, and have neglected what might have contributed to rectify their morals.

Before leaving the Mexican empire I made some particular enquiries into the natural history of the country, its productions, rivers, towns, population, and the general

these particulars, which I have thrown together under one general head, in order to avoid a repetition.

---

## CHAP. XXII.

*Situation of the Mexican empire—Divisions—Description of the vale of Mexico—Climate—Volcanoes—Rivers—Lakes—Mineral productions.*

THE Mexican empire is situated between 9° and 40° north latitude, and 18° and 50° west longitude. Its length is 2000 miles, and breadth 1600. It is bounded on the north by unknown regions; on the east by the gulf of Mexico; on the south by the isthmus of Darien, which separates it from Terra Firma, in South America; and on the west by the Pacific ocean.

This vast country is divided into three grand divisions, which are, Mexico, New-Mexico proper, and California, lying on the west.

The ancient country of Mexico, properly so called, was divided into several provinces, of which the vale of Mexico was the finest in every respect. This vale is surrounded by verdant mountains, measuring upwards of one hundred and twenty miles in circumference at their base. A great part of the vale is occupied by two lakes, the upper one of fresh water, but the lower one brackish, and communicating with the former by means of a canal.

of the valley; hence it was ready, when swelled by extraordinary rains, to overflow the city of Mexico. This delightful region contained the three imperial cities of Mexico, Acolbuacan, and Tlacopan; besides forty others, with innumerable villages and hamlets; but the most considerable of these, according to Clavegero, scarce contain one twentieth part of their former magnificence.

The climate of this vast country varies much, according to the situation of its different parts. The maritime places are hot, unhealthy, and moist; the heat being so great as to cause people to sweat, even in the month of January. This heat is supposed to be owing to the flatness of the coasts, and the accumulation of sand upon them. The moisture arises from the vast evaporation from the sea, as well as from the great torrents of water descending from the mountains. The lands which lie in the neighbourhood of high mountains, the tops of which are always covered with snow, must of necessity be cool; and Clavegero informs us that he has been on a mountain not more than twenty-five miles distant from the city of Mexico, where there was white frost and ice even in dog days.

"All the other inland countries," says the author just mentioned, "where the greatest population prevailed, enjoy a climate so mild and sublime, that they neither feel the rigour of winter nor the heat of summer. It is true that in many of the countries there is frequently

necessary to give warmth in winter; no other relief is wanted in the season of heat but the shade. The same clothing which covers men in the dog days, defends them in January, and the animals sleep all the year under the open sky.

"This mildness and agreeableness of climate under the torrid zone, is the result of several natural causes entirely unknown to the ancients, who did not believe it inhabited, and not well understood by some moderns, by whom it is believed to be unfavourable to those who live in it. The purity of the atmosphere, the smaller obliquity of the solar rays, and the longer stay of this luminary above the horizon in winter, in comparison of other regions farther removed from the equator, concur to lessen the cold and to prevent all that horror which disfigures the face of nature in other climes. During that season a serene sky and the natural delights of the country are enjoyed; whereas under the frigid, and even for the most part under the temperate zones, the clouds rob man of the prospect of heaven, and the snow buries the beautiful productions of the earth.

"No less causes combine to temper the heat of the summer. The plentiful showers which frequently water the earth after mid-day from April or May, to September or October; the high mountains continually loaded with snow, scattered here and there through the country of Anhuae; the cold winds which breathe from them in that season; and the shorter stay of the sun above the horizon, compared with the circumstances of the tempe-

ced by thunder-storms, which are frequent in summer, particularly in the neighbourhood of the mountain of Ilascala; and by earthquakes, which are at all times felt, though with less danger than terror. Storms of hail are neither more frequent nor more severe than in England."

One undoubted inconvenience which Mexico has, is that of volcanoes, of which Clavegero enumerates five. One, called by the Spaniards Volcou D'Orizaba, is higher than the peake of Teneriffe, according to the account of the Jesuit Tallandier, who measured them both. It began to send forth smoke in the year 1545, when it continued burning for twenty years, but has not discovered any symptoms of eruption since that time. It is of a conical figure, and by reason of its great height may be seen at the distance of fifty leagues. The top is always covered with snow, but the lower part by pine and other valuable timber. It lies about ninety miles to the eastward of the capital.

Two other mountains, named Kopscatepee and Iztaccihuatl, which lie near each other, at the distance of thirty-three miles to the southeast of Mexico, are likewise surprisingly high. Clavegero supposes the former to be higher than the highest of the Alps, considering the elevated ground on which the base of it stands. It has a crater more than half a mile wide; from which, in the time of the Mexican kings, great quantities of smoke and flame issued. In the last century it frequently threw out great showers of ashes upon the places adjacent; but in

emitted flames. Both of these mountains have their tops always covered with snow in such quantities, that the masses which fall down upon the neighbouring rocks supply the cities of Mexico, Gelspoli, Choluda, and all the adjacent country for the distance of forty miles, with that commodity, of which the consumption in the city of Mexico was so great in 1812, that the impost on the article for that year amounted to about thirty-six thousand crowns.

Besides these, there are the two mountains of Coliman and Tachtlau, both of which have occasionally emitted flames.

Clavegero does not include in the list of Mexican volcanoes, either those of Nicaragua or Guatimala, because these countries were not subject to the Mexican sovereigns. Those of Guatimala sometimes break forth in a most furious manner, and in the year 1773 entirely destroyed that beautiful city. The Nicaragua volcano called Jurugo, was only a small hill before the year 1760. In that year, however, on the 29th of September, it began to burn with furious explosions, ruining entirely the sugar works, and the neighbouring village of Guacara; and from that time continued to emit fire and broken rocks in such quantities, that in six years the erupted matter had formed itself into three high mountains nearly six miles in circumference. During the time of the first eruption, the ashes were carried as far as the city of Queretaro, which is one hundred and fifty miles distant from the volcano; and at Valladolid, distant [illegible]

Besides these volcanoes, there are other mountains in Mexico of a very remarkable height. The great chain called the Andes are continued through the isthmus of Panama, and through all Mexico, until they are lost in the unknown mountains of the north. The most considerable of that chain is known in Mexico by the name of Sierra Madre, particularly that part of it situated in Cinalo and Tanahumara, provinces no less than one thousand two hundred miles distant from the capital.

Mexico is well watered by very considerable rivers, though none of them are comparable to those of South America. Some of these rivers empty into the gulf of Mexico, and others into the Pacific ocean. The Alvarado has its principal source among the mountains of the Zapotecas, and discharges itself by three navigable mouths into the Mexican gulf, at the distance of thirty miles from Vera Cruz. The Coatzocualco rises among the mountains of the Mixtecas, and empties itself into the gulf near the country of Onbualco. The river Chiapan, which likewise runs into this gulf, rises among the mountains which separate the district of Chiapan from that of Guatimala. The Spaniards call this river Tabasco, by which name they also call that tract of land which unites Yucatan to the Mexican continent. This tract was also called Grijalva, from the name of the commander of the Spanish fleet who discovered it.

The most celebrated of the rivers which run into the Pacific ocean, is that which is called by the Spaniards

There are likewise in this country several lakes of very considerable magnitude, but those of Nicaragua, Chapallau, and Pizquorro, which are of the greatest extent, did not belong to the ancient Mexican empire. The most remarkable were those in the vale of Mexico, in which the capital of the empire was founded. Of these, the fresh water one, called the lake of Chalco, extended in length from east to west twelve miles, as far as the city of Xochiwiles; from thence, taking a northerly direction, it incorporates itself by means of a canal with lake Tetzuco; but its breadth does not exceed six miles. The other of these lakes, lake Tetzuco, formerly extended fifteen, or rather seventeen miles from east to west, and something more from north to south; but its extent is now much less, by reason of the Spaniards having diverted the course of many of the streams which formerly ran into it. The water of this lake is salt, which Clavegero supposes to be owing to the nature of the soil which forms its bed.

Besides these there are a number of smaller lakes, some of which are very delightful. There are a vast variety of mineral waters, of the nitrous, sulphureous, and aluminous kinds, some of them so hot that meat might be boiled in them. At Tetuhuacan is a kind of petrifying water, as well as in several other parts of the empire. One of them forms a kind of smooth white stone, not unpleasant to the taste. the scrapings of which, taken in broth, are celebrated as a diaphoretic, probably without any good reason; the dose for a person not difficult to sweat, is one drachm of the scrapings. Many of the rivers of Mexico afford surprising and beau-

at a place called Tempizque, fifteen miles to the southward of that city. Along a deep river called Aytoyaque, is a natural bridge consisting of a vast mound of earth, along which carriages pass conveniently. Clavegero supposes it to have been the fragment of a mountain, thrown down by an earthquake, and then penetrated by the river.

The mineral productions of Mexico are very valuable. The natives found gold in several provinces of the empire. They gathered it principally from among the sands of their rivers, in grains, and the people in whose country it was found, were obliged to pay a certain part of it, by way of tribute, to the emperor. They dug silver out of the mines in Tlachco, and some other countries; but it was less prized by them than by other nations. Since the conquest, however, so many silver mines have been discovered in that country, especially in the provinces to the northwest of the capital, that it is in vain to attempt an enumeration of them. They had two sorts of copper, one kind of which was so hard as to serve them instead of iron, to make axes, and other instruments, for war and agriculture; the other kind, which was soft and flexible, served for domestic purposes, as with us. They had likewise tin from the mine of Tlachco, and dug lead out of mines in the country of the Otomies, but we are not informed what use they made of this last metal. They had also mines of iron in Tlascala, Tlachco, and some other places; but these were either unknown to the Mexicans, or they did not know how to benefit them-

These minerals were employed in painting and dying, but we know not to what use they put their quicksilver. There was great abundance of amber and asphaltos upon their coasts, both of which were paid in tribute to the emperor of Mexico, from many ports of the empire; the former was wont to be set in gold by way of ornament, and asphaltos was employed in their sacrifices.

Mexico produces some diamonds, though but few in number; but they have in great plenty some other precious stones, such as amethysts, cat's-eyes, turquoises, cornelians, and some green stones resembling emeralds, and very little inferior to them, of all which a tribute was paid to the emperor, by the people in whose territories they were found. They were likewise furnished with crystal in plenty from the mountains which lie on the coast of the Mexican gulf, between the port of Vera Cruz and the river Chinquionquiaco. In the mountains of Celpolalon, to the eastward of Mexico, are quarries of jasper and marble, of different colours; they have likewise alabaster at a place called Tecalco, now Tecula, in the neighbourhood of the province of Tapeyacac, and many other parts of the empire. The stone tetzortli is generally of a dark red colour, pretty hard, porous, and light; it unites most firmly with lime and sand, and on that account it is in great demand for building in the capital where the foundation is bad. There is a large mountain of loadstone lying between Tesitzlau and Chilapan, in the country of the Cohuixcas. They formed curious figures of nephritic stones, some of which are still pre-

whiten their paintings. But the most useful stone they have is called itzli, of which there is great abundance in many parts of Mexico. It has a glossy appearance, is generally of a black colour, though sometimes found of a blue or white, and is semi-transparent. In South America the stone is called pictra del golinarro; and Count Caylus endeavours to show, in a manuscript dissertation quoted by Bomore, that the obsidiona of which the ancients made their vores murrica, were exactly similar to this stone. The Mexicans make of it looking-glasses, knives, lancets, razors, and spears. Sacred uses have been made of it since the introduction of Christianity.

---

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Soil of Mexico—Variety of its vegetable productions—Luxurious growth of its forest trees—Description of the trees which produce liquid amber—Description of the animals peculiar to Mexico—Great variety of birds.*

THE soil of Mexico, though various, produces every where the necessaries, and even the luxuries of life. The Abbe Spolatro, who lately travelled through the

are esteemed, some for their flowers, some for their fruits, some for their leaves, some for their roots, some for their trunk, or their wood, and others for their gum, resin, oil, or juice.

Mexico abounds with a great variety of flowers, many of which are peculiar to the country, while multitudes of others, imported from Europe and Asia, rival in luxuriance the plants of the native country.

The fruits are some of them natives of the Canary islands, and others of Spain, besides those which are the natural growth of the country. The exotics are water-melons, apples, pears, peaches, quinces, apricots, pomegranates, figs, black cherries, walnuts, almonds, olives, chesnuts, and grapes; though these last are likewise natives. There are two kinds of wild vine found in the country, one of which resembles the common vine in its shoots and in the figure of its leaves; it produces large red grapes, covered with a hard skin, but of a sweet and grateful taste, which would undoubtedly greatly improve by culture. The grape of the other kind is large, hard, and of a harsh taste, but they make an excellent conserve of it.

Clavegero is of opinion that the cocoa tree, plantain, citron, orange, and lemon, came from the Philippine and Canary islands; but it is certain that these, as well as other trees, thrive in this country as well as in their native soil.

All the maritime parts of the country abound with cocoanut trees. They have seven kinds of oranges, and five of lemons; they have likewise four kinds of plantains, the largest of which, called the zapala, is from fifteen to twenty inches long, and about three in diameter; it is

hard, but little esteemed, and only eaten when roasted or boiled. The platano largo, or large plantain, is about eight inches long and one and a half in diameter; the skin is at first green, but becomes blackish when perfectly ripe. The guirco is a smaller fruit, but richer, softer, and more delicious, though not so wholesome. A species of plantain called the dominico, is smaller and more delicate than the others. There are whole woods of plantain trees, oranges, and lemons; and the people of Michuacan carry on a considerable trade with the dried plantains, which are preferable either to raisins or figs.

The Abbe Spolatro enumerates thirty-eight different species of fruit, natives of Mexico, besides many others, the names of which are not mentioned.

Hernandez, another writer, mentions four kinds of cocoa, the smallest kind of which was in the most use, for making chocolate and other drinks daily made use of; the other kinds served rather for money in commerce than for aliment. The cocoa was one of the plants most cultivated in the countries of the empire, and many of the provinces paid their tribute to the emperor in this article, particularly that of Xoconocho, the cocoa of which was particularly esteemed.

Cotton was one of the most valuable productions of the country, as it served instead of flax, though this last article was also produced in the country: it is of two kinds, the white and tawny coloured.

The inhabitants of this country make use of rocou, or Brazil-wood, in their dying, as do also the Europeans.

tion of that article from Europe, was maize, called by the Mexicans tluslis, of which there were several kinds, differing in size, weight, colour, and taste. This kind of grain was brought from Mexico to Spain, and from Spain to other countries of Europe.

The French bean was the principal kind of pulse in use among them, of which there were more species than of the maize: the largest was called ayacotli, which was of the size of the common bean, and had a beautiful red flower; but the most esteemed was the small black, heavy French bean. This kind of pulse, which is not good in Italy, is in Mexico so excellent that it not only serves for sustenance to the poorer class of people, but is esteemed a luxury by the Spanish nobility.

Of the excellent roots of Mexico, the following were the most remarkable: the xicama, called by the Mexicans catzotl; this root is about the size and shape of an onion, solid, fresh, juicy, and of a white colour; it is always eaten raw. The camate is another kind very common in the country, of which there are three sorts, white, yellow, and purple; this kind is best when boiled. The cacomite is the root of a plant which has a beautiful flower called the tiger-flower, with three red pointed petals, the middle part mixed with white and red, somewhat resembling the spots of the animal from which it takes its name. The huacamate is the root of a kind of cassavi plant, and is likewise boiled. The papa, a root which has been transplanted into Europe and greatly admired for its delicacy and good flavour, was brought from

vegetables, imported from the Canaries, Spain, and other countries of Europe.

The American aloe is very similar to the real one, and is a plant of which the Mexicans did formerly, and the Spaniards do at present, make great use.

They have in this country a variety of palm trees, from the fibres of which they make thread: the bark of some of them, to the depth of three fingers, is a mass of membranes, of which the poor people make mats: the leaves of others are used as ornaments at their festivals; they are round, gross, white, and shining, and have the appearance of shells heaped one upon another. A fourth kind bears nuts called escoas, or nuts of oil; these nuts are of the size of a nutmeg, having in the inside a white, oily, eatable kernel, covered by a thin purple pellicle. The oil has a sweet scent, and is easily condensed, when it becomes a soft mass, as white as snow.

Of timber trees there are a great variety, not inferior to any in the world; and as there are a variety of climates in the country, every one produces a kind of wood peculiar to itself. There are whole woods of cedars, and ebonies; vast quantities of agallochum, or wood of aloes; besides others, valuable on account of their weight, durability, and hardness, or for their being easily cut, pliable, of a fine colour, or an agreeable smell. There are also in Mexico, innumerable trees remarkable for their size. Acosta, mentions a cedar, the trunk of which was sixteen fathoms in circumference; and I measured one which was one hundred and ten feet in length. In the

conveniently hold fourteen horsemen; nay, we are informed by the archbishop of Toledo, that in 1770 he went to view it along with the archbishop of Gautamala, at which time he caused a hundred young lads to enter its cavity. Our author mentions some other trees of the species called ceiba, which for magnitude may be compared with this celebrated fir: "The largeness of these trees," says he, "is proportioned to their prodigious elevation, and they afford a most delightful prospect at the time they are adorned with new leaves, and loaded with fruit, in which there is enclosed a particular species of fine white cotton; this might be, and perhaps is made into webs as soft, delicate, and perhaps more so than silk; but it is toilsome to spin, on account of the smallness of the threads, and the profit does not requite the labour, the web not being lasting. Some use it for pillows, and matrasses, which have the singular property of expanding enormously when exposed to the heat of the sun." De Bomane says, "That the Africans make of the thread of the ceiba, that vegetable taffeta which is so scarce and so much esteemed in Europe. The scarcity of such cloth is not to be wondered at, considering the difficulty of making it. The ceiba is higher than all other trees yet known."

The tree producing liquid amber, the liquid storax of the Mexicans, is of a large size; the leaves are similar to those of the maple, indented, white in one part and dark in the other, disposed of threes; the fruit is thorny and round, but polygonal, with the surface and the angles yellow; the bark of the tree partly green and partly tawney. By incision in the trunk they extract

of the same name which is still more valuable. Liquid amber is likewise obtained from a decoction of the branches, but it is inferior to that obtained from the trunk.

The name copalli, in Mexico, is generic, and common to all the resins, but especially signifies those made use of for incense. There are ten species of these trees, yielding resins of this kind, the principal of which is that from which the copal is got, so well known in medicine and varnishes. A great quantity of this was made use of by the ancient Mexicans, and is still used for similar purposes by the Spaniards. The tecopalli, or tepecopalli, is a resin similar to the incense of Arabia, which distils from a tree of moderate size that grows in the mountains, having a fruit like an acorn, and containing the nut inveloped in a mucilage, within which there is a small kernel useful in medicine.

The misquitl, or mesquite, is a species of true acacia, and the gum distilling from it is said to be the true gum arabic. It is a thorny shrub, with branches irregularly disposed, the leaves small, thin, and finnated, and the flowers like those of the birch tree; the fruit is sweet and eatable, and contains a seed of which the barbarous Chickemacas used to make a kind of paste which served them for bread. The wood is exceedingly hard and heavy, and the trees are as common in Mexico as oaks are in Europe.

Of the elastic gums, which are found in plenty in

to what is done in Europe with wax, and by which means they are all rendered water proof.

Clavegero laments, that the history of vegetables in Mexico is very little known, and that of animals no better. Although there have been several writers of considerable abilities since his time, yet much remains to be explored, and a vast field is still open to the botanist and zoologist, well worthy of attention.

"The first Spaniards," says he, "who gave them names, were more skilful in the art of war than in the study of nature. Instead of retaining the terms which would have been most proper, they denominated many animals tigers, wolves, bears, dogs, squirrels, &c. although they were very different, merely from some resemblance in the colour of their skin, their figure, or some similarity in habits and disposition."

The quadrupeds found in Mexico at the arrival of the Spaniards were, lions, tigers, wild cats, bears, wolves, foxes, the common stag, white stags, bucks, wild goats, badgers, polecats, weazels, martins, squirrels, polatucas, rabbits, hares, otters, and rats. All these animals are supposed to be common to both continents. The white stag, whether it be the same as the other kind or not, is undoubtedly common to both, and was known to the Greeks and Romans. The Mexicans call it the "king of the stags."

M. Buffon imagines the white colour of this stag to be the effect of captivity; but Clavegero says that it is found wild, and of the same white colour, on almost all the

the lion, the tiger, or the rabbit, to be natives of this country.

The animals which are common to Mexico with the other parts of the continent, are the Mexican hog, the mousete, the opossum, the armidillo, and the techichi, a small animal resembling a dog, which being perfectly dumb, gave occasion for the report that the Mexican dogs could not bark. The flesh of this animal was esteemed an agreeable and nourishing food. After the conquest of Mexico, the Spaniards, having neither large cattle nor sheep, provided their markets with this animal, by which means the species became extinct, though it had been very numerous.

The land squirrel is very numerous in the kingdom of Michuachan; it has great elegance of form, and is extremely graceful in its movements, but it cannot be tamed, and bites most furiously every person who approaches it.

Besides these, there are sea-lions, raccoons, and that voracious animal named the tapir. There are likewise great numbers of monkies, of many different kinds, some of which have heads resembling those of dogs, and some of them are strong and fierce, equalling a man in stature when they stand upright.

Among the animals peculiar to Mexico, is one named by Clavegero the coyoto, which appears to have been inaccurately described by historians, some making it of one species, and some of another. The tlacojotl, or ilelcoyo-

size of a small dog, is so bold that it attacks deer, and sometimes kills them.

Another animal, larger than either of the two former, is called the xoloitzcuintli; some of these are no less than four feet in length; its face resembles that of the dog, and it has tusks like the wolf; its ears are erect, its neck is gross, and its tail long. This animal is entirely destitute of hair except on the snout, where there are some thick crooked bristles; the whole body is covered with a smooth, soft, ash-coloured skin, with black and tawny spots. This species of animals, as well as the two former, are almost totally extinct.

An animal called ocstochly, a kind of wild cat, is remarkable, more for the fabulous account of it, than for any singular property with which it is really endowed. According to the account of Dr. Hernandez, when this creature takes any prey, it covers it with leaves, and afterwards, mounting on some neighbouring tree, it begins howling, to invite other animals to partake of its prey, being itself always the last to eat, because the poison of its tongue is so strong, that if it ate first the prey would be infected, and the other animals which should eat would die. To these must be added a curious animal of the mole kind, which is called the tozan, or tuza; it is about the size of an European mole, but very different in other respects.

The birds are so numerous, and of such various appearance and qualities, that Mexico has been called the country of birds, as Africa is that of quadrupeds. A

the falcons were formerly esteemed so excellent, that by the desire of Philip II. an hundred of them were every year sent over to Spain. The largest, the most beautiful, and the most valuable kind of eagles, is that called by the Mexicans itzquachli, which will pursue, not only the larger kinds of birds, but quadrupeds, and even men.

The aquatic birds are very numerous, and of great variety; there are at least twenty species of ducks, a vast variety of geese, with several kinds of herons, swans, quails, water-rails, divers, king-fishers, pelicans, &c. The multitude of ducks is so great that they sometimes cover the fields, and appear at a distance like flocks of sheep. Some of the herons and egrets are perfectly white, and some ash-coloured; others have the plumage of the body white, while the neck, the top and upper parts of the wings, and part of the tail, are enlivened with a bright scarlet, or beautiful blue.

There are a great number of birds that are valuable on account of their plumage, which was made use of by the Mexicans in their excellent mosaic work, an art which seems now to be totally lost. Peacocks have been brought from the old continent to Mexico, but not being attended to, have propagated very slowly.

The birds remarkable for their songs are likewise very numerous; among these, that called the centzouilt, by Europeans the mock-bird, is most remarkable, on account of its counterfeiting the notes of all others it hears.

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Description of the reptiles found in Mexico—Extraordinary size of some of them—Large frogs—Description of the flying insects—Worms—Description of the zoophytes found on trees.*

MEXICO, as well as all other countries in America, abounds with reptiles, many of which are of an enormous size. In the course of my travels I have had occasion to mention several, whose extraordinary length may have been thought to have been exaggerated; but although not very common, they are frequently met with, and are mentioned by others without much surprise.

The crocodiles are not less to be dreaded than those of Africa or Asia. There are likewise some of those monstrous serpents which are met with in the East-Indies and in South-America, (and one of them, it will be recollected, I killed, and particularly described,) though happily they are not numerous, being seldom to be met with in any place but in woods and other unfrequented places.

There are great numbers of lizards, some of which are supposed to be poisonous, but I think this opinion is ill-founded.

There are several kinds of poisonous serpents, of which the rattlesnake is one. Another kind of poisonous serpents is the cemecoatl, which is remarkable for having a

Among the harmless snakes is a very beautiful one about a foot in length, and of the thickness of the little finger: this snake seems to take great pleasure in the society of ants, insomuch that it will accompany these insects on their expeditions, and return with them to their usual rest: it is called both by the Spaniards and Mexicans "the mother of ants." An eminent writer supposes, that all the attachment which this snake shows to the ant-hill, is occasioned by its living on the ants themselves.

The ancient Mexicans were wont to take delight in keeping a harmless green snake which they caught in the fields, and which, when well fed, would grow to the length of five or six feet. It was generally kept in a tub, which it never left but to receive food from the hand of his master, and this it would take either mounted on his shoulder, or coiled about his legs.

The aquatic animals are innumerable. Clavegero mentions a species of frogs which are so large that a single one will weigh a pound, and which are excellent food. Of fish proper for food, he says he has counted upwards of one hundred, without taking in the turtle, crab, or any other crustaceous fish.

Of flying, and other minute insects, the number is prodigiously great. There are a variety of beetles; some, of a green colour, make a great noise in travelling, on which account they are much esteemed by children. There are great numbers of shining beetles, as well as luminous flies, which abound in the country, which make a delightful appearance.

taste: another is called the wandering wasp, from its frequent change of abode, and in consequence of these changes it is constantly employed in collecting materials for its habitations. There is also a black hornet with a red tail, the sting of which is so large and strong that it will not only penetrate a sugar-cane, but even the trunk of a tree.

The lake of Mexico abounds with a kind of fly, the eggs of which are deposited upon the flags and rushes in such quantities as to form large masses; these are collected by the fishermen, and carried to market for sale; they are eaten both by Mexicans and Spaniards, and have much the same taste as the caviare of fish. The Mexicans also eat the flies themselves, ground and made up with saltpetre.

There are abundance of gnats on lakes and in moist places, but the capital, by the late improvements which have taken place, is rendered entirely free from them. There are other flies which make no noise in their flight, but whose bite causes a violent itching, and if the part be scratched, an open wound is apt to ensue.

The butterflies are very numerous, and their wings glow with colours far superior to those of Europe: the figures of some of them are given by Hernandez.

But, with all its beauties and advantages, Mexico is subject to the dreadful devastations of locusts, which sometimes occasion destructive famines.

There are some of the worms of Mexico made use of by the inhabitants as food; others are poisonous. There

thick. The scorpions are very numerous, and, in the hot parts of the country, their poison is so strong as to kill children, and give terrible pain to adults. Their sting is most dangerous during those hours of the day in which the sun is hottest.

In the province of Michuacan is a singular species of ant, larger than the common one, with a greyish body and black head; on its hinder parts is a little bag, full of a sweet substance, of which children are very fond. The Mexicans suppose this to be a kind of honey collected by the insect; but I think it rather the eggs.

There is a mischievous kind of tick, which in the hot countries abounds among the grass: from thence it easily gets upon the clothes, and from them upon the skin; there it fixes with such force, from the particular figure of its feet, that it can scarcely be got off. At first it seems nothing but a small black speck, but in a short time enlarges to such a degree, from the blood which it sucks, that it equals the size of a bean, and then assumes a leaden colour. Oviedo, a celebrated Spanish writer, says the best and safest method of getting speedily rid of it, is by anointing the part with oil, and then scraping it with a knife. If it is not speedily removed, a wound is made similar to that which the rigera, or chegoe makes.

The following insects were eaten by the ancient Mexicans, viz. The atilepitz, a marsh grasshopper, of a dark colour and great size, being not less than six inches long and two broad. The atopiana, a marsh beetle, resembling in shape and size the flying beetle, having four feet, and covered with a hard shell. The abuillhuila, a

on the upper part of the body, and white upon the under part; it stings with its tail, which is hard and poisonous. The ocuitlitz, a black marsh worm, which becomes white on being roasted.

Among the curious productions of the animal kind to be met with in this country, Clavegero mentions a kind of zoophytes, which he saw in the year 1751, in a house in the country, about ten miles from the city of Angelopoli, towards the southeast; they are three or four inches long, and have four very long slender feet, with two antenuæ. Their body is nothing more than the fibres of the leaves, of the same shape, size, and colour, with those of the other leaves of the trees upon which these creatures are found. The zoophytes, however, are very rare, there being but four in the whole city of Mexico, which are kept in the cabinets of the curious.

Cochineal is one of the most valuable products of Mexico, and great care is taken to rear the insect in different parts. The best is that which comes from the province of the Mixtecas. Some have reckoned that more than two thousand five hundred bags of cochineal are sent every year from Mixteca to Spain; and the trade in that article, carried on by the city of Oaxala, is computed at two hundred thousand crowns value.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Particular description of the inhabitants of the Mexican empire—Illiberality of denying them the talent of invention—Disinterestedness of their character—Comparison between the ancient and modern Mexicans—Some particulars of the Mestees—Inhumanity of the first conquerors of Mexico—Humane interposition of Bartholomew Las Casas—Partial emancipation of the Indians—Inefficacy of it—Illiberality of the Spanish government—Employments of the Mexicans.*

THOUGH Mexico was originally inhabited by a number of different nations, yet all of them much resembled each other, not only in character, but in their external appearance. "They generally rather exceed than fall under the middle size, and are well proportioned in all their limbs. They have good complexions, narrow foreheads, black eyes, clean, white, firm, and regular teeth; thick, black, coarse, glossy hair; thin beards, and generally no hair upon their legs, thighs, and arms. Their skin is of an olive colour. There is scarcely a nation on earth in which there are fewer persons deformed; and it would be more difficult to find a single hump-backed, lame, or squint-eyed man, among a thousand Mexicans, than among an hundred of any other nation.

"The unpleasantness of their colour, the smallness of their foreheads, the thinness of their beards, and the

can neither be called very beautiful nor the contrary, but seem to hold a middle place between the extremes; their appearance neither engages nor disgusts. But among the young women of Mexico there are many very beautiful and fair, whose beauty is at the same time rendered more winning by the natural sweetness of their manner of speaking, and by the pleasantness and natural modesty of their whole behaviour.

"Their senses are very acute, particularly that of sight, which they enjoy unimpaired to the latest age. Their constitutions are sound, and their health robust: they are entirely free of many disorders which are common among the Spaniards; but of the epidemical diseases to which their country is occasionally subject, they are generally the victims; with them these diseases begin, and with them they end. One never perceives in a Mexican that stinking breath which is occasioned in other people by the corruption of the humours, or indigestion. Their constitutions are phlegmatic; but the pituitous evacuations from their heads are very scanty, and they seldom spit. They become grey-headed and bald earlier than the Spaniards; and although most of them die with acute diseases, it is not very uncommon among them to attain the age of an hundred. They are now, and ever have been, moderate in eating, but their passion for strong liquors is carried to the greatest excess; formerly they were kept within bounds by the severity of the laws, but now that these liquors have become so common they are unrestrained, and one half of the people seem to have lost their senses; and this

of correcting them, is undoubtedly the principal cause of the havoc which is made among them by epidemical disorders.

"Many persons allow the Mexicans to possess a great talent at imitation, but deny them that of invention: a vulgar error, which is contradicted by the ancient history of that people. Their minds are affected by the same variety of passions with those of other nations, but not to an equal degree: the Mexicans seldom exhibit those transports of anger, or frenzies of love, which are so common in other countries. They are slow in their motions, and show a wonderful tenacity and steadiness in those works which require time and long continued attention. They are most patient under injuries and hardships, and where they suspect no evil intention, are most grateful for any kindness shewn; but some Spaniards, who cannot distinguish patience from insensibility, nor distrust from ingratitude, say proverbially that the Indians are alike insensible to injuries or benefits. That habitual distrust which they entertain of all who are not of their nation, prompts them often to lie and betray, so that good faith certainly has not been respected among them so much as it deserves. They are by nature taciturn, serious, and austere, and show more anxiety to punish crimes than to reward virtue.

"Generosity and disinterestedness are the principal features of their character. Gold, with the Mexican, has not that value which it possesses with others. They seem to give without reluctance what it has cost them the utmost labour to acquire. The [illegible]

them, seem to have been the only ground for the much exaggerated charge of indolence against the Mexicans; and after all, there is no set of people in that country who labour more, or whose labour is more necessary.

"The respect paid by the young people to the aged, and by children to their parents, seem to be a principle born with them. Parents are very fond of their children; but the affection which husbands bear to their wives is certainly less than that which wives bear to their husbands; and it is very common for the men to love their neighbours' wives better than their own.

"Courage and cowardice seem alternately so to affect their minds, that it is often difficult to determine whether the one or the other predominates: they meet dangers with intrepidity when they proceed from natural causes, but are easily terrified by the stern looks of a Spaniard. That stupid indifference about death and eternity, which some authors have thought inherent in the character of every Mexican, is peculiar only to those who are yet so rude and uninformed as to have no idea of a future state."

Thus much with respect to the general character of the Mexicans; but, as an eminent writer observes, "the modern Mexicans are not in all respects similar to the ancient, as the Greeks of these days have little resemblance to those who lived in the times of Plato and Pericles. The ancient Mexicans shewed more fire, and were more sensible to the impressions of honour; they were more intrepid, more nimble, more active, more industrious, but the

are held in very great contempt. It is well known that the court of Madrid, in order to replenish a part of that dreadful vacancy which the avarice and cruelty of the conquerors had occasioned, and to regain the confidence of those who had escaped their fury, encouraged as much as possible the marriage of Spaniards with Indian women: these alliances, which became pretty common throughout Spanish America, were particularly frequent in Mexico, where the women had more understanding, and were more agreeable than in other places. The Créoles transferred to this mixed progeny the contemptuous slight they received from the Europeans: their condition, equivocal at first, in process of time became fixed between the whites and the blacks.

These blacks are not very numerous in Mexico. As the natives are more intelligent, more industrious, and more robust, than those of the other colours, they have hardly introduced any Africans, except such as were required either to indulge the caprice, or perform the domestic service of the rich people. These slaves, who are much beloved by their masters, on whom they absolutely depend, who purchased them at an extravagant price, and who make them the ministers of their pleasures, take advantage of the high favour they enjoy, to oppress the Mexicans: they assume over these men who are called *free*, an ascendancy, which keeps up an implacable hatred between the two nations. The law has studied to encourage this aversion, by taking effectual measures to prevent all connexion between them. Negroes are

accounts, the Africans, who in other settlements are enemies to Europeans, are in the Spanish Indies their warm friends.

Authority has no need of this support, at least in Mexico, where population is no longer what it was formerly. The first historians, and those who copied them, have recorded that the Spaniards found in Mexico ten millions of souls. This is supposed to have been the exaggerated account of conquerors, to exalt the splendour of their triumph; and it was adopted without examination with so much the more readiness, as it rendered them the more odious. We need only trace with attention the progress of those ruffians who at first desolated these fine countries, in order to be convinced that they had not succeeded in multiplying men at Mexico and the adjacent parts, but by depopulating the centre of the empire: and that the provinces which are remote from the capital, differed in nothing from the other deserts in South and North America. It is making a great concession to allow that the population of Mexico has been exaggerated one half, for it does not now much exceed two millions.

It is generally believed that the first conquerors massacred the Indians out of wantonness, and that even the priests incited them to these acts of ferocity. Undoubtedly these inhuman soldiers frequently shed blood without even an apparent motive; and certainly the fanatic missionaries did not oppose these barbarities as they ought to have done.

This was no[illegible] ...ginal

its wretched inhabitants more rigorous toil than was compatible with their constitution and the climate.

This oppression was coeval with the conquest of the country. All the lands were divided between the crown, the companions of Cortez, and the grandees, or ministers, who were most in favour at the court of Spain. The Mexicans appointed to the royal domains, were destined to public labours, which originally were considerable. The lot of those who were employed on the estates of individuals, was still more wretched: all groaned under a dreadful yoke. They were ill fed, and had no wages given them. Services were required of them, under which the most robust men would have sunk.

Their misfortunes excited the compassion of Bartholomew De Las Casas. This man, so famous in the annals of the new world, had accompanied his father, in the first voyage made by Columbus. The mildness and simplicity of the Indians affected him so strongly, that he made himself an ecclesiastic, in order to devote his labours to their conversion; but this soon became the least of his attention. As he was more a man than a priest, he felt more for the cruelties exercised against them than for their superstition. He was continually hurrying from one hemisphere to the other, in order to comfort the people for whom he had conceived an attachment, or to soften their tyrants. This conduct, which made him idolized by the one, and dreaded by the other, had not the success he expected.

avarice and cruelty which he endeavoured
abdicated it. It was then, that this cou
disinterested man, accused his country b
bunal of the whole universe. In his ac
tyranny of the Spaniards in America, he ac
having destroyed fifteen millions of the In
ventured to find fault with the acrimony of
no one accused him of exaggeration.
which indicate the amiable turn of his di
the sublimity of his sentiments, have stam
upon his barbarous countrymen, which tim
never will have power to efface.

The court of Madrid, awakened by the r
of the virtuous Las Casas, and by the indig
whole world, became sensible at last, that
permitted was repugnant to religion, to hun
policy, and resolved to break the chains of t
Their liberty was now only restrained, by
dition that they should not quit the territc
were settled. This precaution owed its
fear that was entertained of their going to
dering savages to the north and south of th

With their liberty, their lands ought to
stored to them; but this was not done.
compelled them to work solely for their c
was only decreed that the Spaniards in
they laboured, should stipulate to keep t
pay them to the amount of five pounds f
year.

conquerors should have thought of establishing: this was a fund set apart in each community, and appropriated to the relief of such Indians as were decayed or indisposed, and to their support under private or public calamities.

The distribution of this fund was committed to their caciques. These were not the descendants of those whom they found in the country at the time of the conquest; but the Spaniards chose them from among those Indians who appeared the most attached to their interests, and were under no apprehension from the circumstance of making these dignitaries hereditary. Their authority was limited to the support of the police in their district, which generally extends eight or ten leagues, to the collecting of the tribute of those Indians who laboured on their own account, that of the others being stopped by the masters whom they served, and to the preventing of their flight, by keeping them always under their inspection, and not suffering them to contract any engagement without their consent. As a reward for their services, these magistrates obtained from government a property: they were permitted to take out of the common stock two pence half penny annually, for every Indian under their jurisdiction. At last they were empowered to get their fields cultivated by such young men as were not subject to the poll tax; and to employ girls till the time of their marriage, in such occupations as were suited to their sex, without allowing them any salary except their maintenance.

would their avarice permit them to pay for labour which hitherto had cost them nothing. They employed themselves successively, or in combinations, craft, remonstrance, and violence, to effect the subversion of an arrangement which so strongly contradicted their warmest passions; but their efforts were ineffectual. Las Casas had raised up for his beloved Indians, protectors who seconded his design with zeal and warmth. The Mexicans themselves, finding a support, impeached their oppressors before the tribunals that were either weak, or in the interest of the court. They carried their resolution so far as even unanimously to refuse to work for those who had treated any of their countrymen with injustice. This mutual agreement, more than any other circumstance, gave solidity to the regulations which had been decreed; the order prescribed by the laws was gradually established. There was no longer any regular system of oppression, but merely several of those particular vexations which a vanquished people who have lost their government can hardly avoid from those who have subdued it.

These clandestine acts of injustice did not prevent the Mexicans from recovering, from time to time, certain detached portions of that immense territory of which their fathers had been despoiled. They purchased them of the royal domain, or of the great proprietors. It was not their labour which enabled them to make these acquisitions; for this they were indebted to the discovery of some mines and other treasures which had been concealed at the time of the conquest. The greatest number

Even those who experienced a fortune less propitious, procured for themselves by the sole profits of their pay, more conveniences than they had enjoyed before they yielded to a foreign yoke. We should be very much deceived if we were to judge of the ancient prosperity of the inhabitants of Mexico from what has been said by different writers of its emperor, its court, its capital, and the governors of its provinces. Despotism had there produced those fatal effects which it produces every where. The whole state was sacrificed to the caprices, pleasures, and magnificence of a small number of persons.

The government drew considerable advantages from the mines which it caused to be worked, and still greater from those which were in the hands of individuals. The salt works greatly added to its revenue. Those who followed agriculture, at the time of harvest paid a kind of a third of all the produce of the lands, whether they belonged to them as their property, or whether they were only the farmers of them. Men who lived by the chase, fishermen, cotters, and all mechanicks, paid the same proportion of their industry every month. Even the poor were taxed at certain fixed contributions, which their labour or their alms might put them in a condition to pay.

The Mexicans are now less unhappy. European fruits, corn, and cattle, have rendered their food more wholesome, agreeable, and abundant. Their houses are better

them better economists, and more laborious. This case, however, is far from being universal; it is even very uncommon in the vicinity of mines, of towns, and of great roads, where tyranny seldom sleeps; but we often find it with satisfaction in remote parts, where the Spaniards are not numerous, and where they have in some measure become Mexicans.

The employments of this people are very various: the most intelligent, and those who are in easy circumstances, devote themselves to the most necessary and most useful manufactures, which are dispersed through the whole empire. The most beautiful manufactures are established among the people of Lasca, their old capital, and the new one, which is called Angelos, which are the centre of this industry. In these places they manufacture cloth that is pretty fine, calicoes that have a handsome appearance, certain slight silk goods, hats, gold lace, embroidery, lace, glasses, and a great deal of hardware.

The care of flocks affords a maintenance to some Mexicans whom fortune or nature has not called to more distinguished employments. The single province of Tecuman sends every year to Vera Cruz and Mexico, upwards of 80,000 beeves, besides a large number of mules and horses. Their horses, it is said, have degenerated; but the quality is compensated by the number. They substitute hog's lard in the place of butter. Their sheep are numerous, but the wool is coarse, dry, and bad, as it is every where between the tropics.

The vine and olive tree has experienced the same degeneracy; the cultivation of them was at first prohibited,

to the Jesuits, and a little afterwards to the Marquis del Valle, a descendant from Cortez, to cultivate them: the attempts have not proved successful. The trials, indeed, that have been made, have not been abandoned; but no person has solicited the liberty of following an example which did not promise any great emoluments. Other cultures have been more successful: cotton, sugar, silk, cocoa, tobacco, and European corn, have all thriven in some degree. The Spaniards are encouraged to prosecute the labours which these cultures require, from the happy circumstance of their having discovered iron mines, which were entirely unknown to the Mexicans, as well as some mines of a kind of copper that is hard enough to serve for implements of husbandry. However, from a want of men of industry, scarcely any thing is raised more than what is wanted for the consumption of the country: there is only the vanilla, indigo, and cochineal, which make a part of the trade of Mexico with other nations.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*General observations—Review of the benefits which have resulted to Europeans by the discovery of America—Sketch of the history of the Mexican empire—Expedition by Cortez—Death of Montezuma—Cruelties practised upon Gautemozin—Entire subjugation of the country by the Spaniards.*

We have now given a long account of the empire of Mexico, in which nothing has been omitted which could give information, or throw any light upon a country which boasts of all the varieties of soil, from barren rocks to fertile plains and vallies. The author does not think it proper to pass on without giving a general account of its first subjugation by the Spaniards. In doing this, the mind will be led with astonishment, to contemplate the many barbarities which were committed by men who called themselves civilized, and whose ostensible reasons for invading the country were for the purpose of obtaining proselytes to the religion of Jesus! that religion which teaches us benevolence and good will towards all men.

I cannot, however, with some authors, lament that America was ever discovered. Although human depravity has depopulated one part of our continent of nearly seven millions of inhabitants who claimed possession immediately from the [illegible] God, yet it has secured

given wealth and independence to a large portion who were groaning in poverty and bondage at home; and in the United States, created seven millions of freemen, who, having adopted a constitution by which they are enabled to choose their own rulers, are governed by men of their own choice, and laws which secure to every citizen the free use of those rights which were transmitted to him by his forefathers.

The empire of Mexico, after various attempts by others, was finally subdued by Cortez, in the year 1325. Montezuma was at that time emperor of Mexico. In the course of the year he was treacherously taken by Cortez, and held as a prisoner. During the imprisonment of Montezuma, Cortez and his army had made repeated attacks on his subjects, but without success. Cortez was now determined, as his last recourse, to try what effect the interposition of Montezuma might have, to soothe or overawe his subjects. This unfortunate prince, at the mercy of the treacherous Spaniards, and reduced to the sad necessity of becoming the instrument of his own disgrace, and of the slavery of his subjects, advanced to the battlements in his royal robes, in all the pomp in which he used to appear on solemn occasions. At sight of their sovereign, whom they had long been accustomed to honour, and almost revere as a god, the weapons dropped from their hands, every tongue was silent, all bowed their heads, and many prostrated themselves on the ground.

ceeded reproaches and threats, and their fury rising, in a moment they violently poured in whole flights of arrows, and vollies of stones, upon this unhappy monarch. Two of the arrows struck him in his body, which, with the blow of a stone on his temple, put an end to his life.

Gautemozin succeeded Montezuma, and maintained a vigorous opposition against the assaults of Cortez; but he, like his predecessor, after a noble defence, was forced to submit, and his capital was wrested from him by Cortez and his followers.

The exultation of the Spaniards, on accomplishing this arduous enterprise, was at first excessive. But this was quickly damped by the cruel disappointment of those sanguine hopes which had animated them amidst so many hardships and dangers. Instead of inexhaustible wealth, which they expected from becoming masters of Montezuma's treasures, and the ornaments of so many temples, their rapaciousness could collect only an inconsiderable booty, amidst ruins and desolation. Gautemozin, aware of his impending fate, had ordered what remained of the riches amassed by his ancestors to be thrown into the lake. The Indian auxiliaries, while the Spaniards were engaged in conflict with the enemy, had carried off the most valuable part of the spoil. The sum to be divided among the conquerors was so small, that many of them disdained to accept of the pittance which fell to their share,* and all murmured and exclaimed, some against Cortez and his confidants, whom they suspected of having secretly appropriated to their

own use, a large portion of the riches which should have been brought into the common stock; others against Gautemozin, whom they accused of obstinacy in refusing to discover the place where he had hidden his treasure.

Arguments, entreaties, and promises, were employed in order to soothe them, but with so little effect, that Cortez, from solicitude to check the growing spirit of discontent, gave way to a deed which stained the glory of all his great actions. Without regarding the former dignity of Gautemozin, or feeling any reverence for those virtues which he had displayed, he subjected the unhappy monarch, together with his chief favourite, to torture, in order to force from them a discovery of the royal treasure, which it was supposed they had concealed. Gautemozin bore whatever the refined cruelty of his tormentors could inflict, with the invincible fortitude of an American warrior. His fellow sufferer, overcome by the violence of the anguish, turned a dejected eye towards his master, which seemed to implore his permission to reveal all he knew. But the high spirited prince darted upon him a look of authority mingled with scorn, and checked his weakness by asking, "Am *I* reposing on a bed of flowers?" Overawed by the reproach, he persevered in his dutiful silence, and expired. Cortez, ashamed of a scene so horrid, rescued the royal victim from the hands of his torturers, and prolonged a life reserved for new indignities and sufferings.

The fate of the capital, as both parties had foreseen,

and penetrated in different quarters to the great South ocean, which, according to the ideas of Columbus, they imagined would open a short as well as an easy passage to the East Indies, and secure to the crown of Castile all the envied wealth of these fertile regions. The active mind of Cortez already began to form schemes for attempting this important discovery. In his after schemes, however, he was disappointed, but Mexico has ever since remained under the Spanish yoke; although the late struggles which have animated these injured people to declare themselves free, seem to point out that the time has now arrived when a dismemberment from a Spanish despotism is about to take place, and the time not far distant when the southern will be as free as the northern parts of America.

In compiling this general view of the Mexican empire, I have with considerable care selected from the latest and most approved authorities. My residence in the city of Mexico gave me an opportunity of consulting works which were valuable and rare, and of receiving much information from gentlemen who had been long resident in the country.

I feel myself under particular obligations to Mr. Lacour, and our vice-consul, Mr. Stephen, who were zealous to procure me all the information in their power, which would be of service to me. To the principal of the Jesuit's college, who allowed me free access to their large and valuable library, and who furnished me with a manuscript written by the celebrated Bomare, I feel particularly grateful. From the works of the famous Abbe

When we consider the important revolutions which are taking place in this country, and the probability that she will one day or other become an independent country, and by far the richest in the world as it respects minerals, it cannot but be desirable to have an accurate account of the country, and that too from such sources as may be relied on.

---

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Author is taken up as a spy—Further residence in Mexico rendered unsafe—Starts for St. Antonio—Arrival at that place—Description of it—Difficulty of procuring a guide—Unexpected disappearance of Edom—His return—Set out on our journey—Singular conduct of my guide—Surrounded by banditti—Carried to their cave—Conversation with the captain of the gang—Act in the capacity of a physician, and acquire the friendship of the captain—Singular conversation.*

FEBRUARY, 1814. I now thought of returning to the United States, as my long residence in Mexico had enabled me to collect all the information in my power respecting its soil, manners, customs, &c. and letters which I now received from my friends required my im-

many places which it is not common to allow strangers to visit; and in the course of my visits I frequently took notes of such curiosities as I thought worthy of attention. This had been observed by some of those informers, who are scattered over every despotic government, and who obtain a living by depriving their fellow creatures of liberty; information was immediately given by them to the officers of government, that I was a spy, acting under the orders of a foreign government. I was watched still closer, and some circumstances seeming to justify their suspicion, I was arrested and conducted before the tribunal. My papers, at the same time, were seized, and I was not allowed to have communication with any one. Fortunately, in all my writings I had avoided speaking unfavourably of the Spanish government, reserving my observations to some future period. My papers underwent a very strict examination, but nothing appearing in evidence against me, after a detention of three days, at the particular and earnest request of Mr. Lacour, and some other American gentlemen, I was released; at the same time I was given to understand that my longer residence in the country would be attended with some difficulty, and was advised to take my departure as soon as possible.

Before this affair took place, I had made arrangements for going to St. Antonio, the capital of the province of Apachiera, and had already contracted for a number of mules, which I intended taking by that route through the Tucarpan tribe, on [illegible] made all prepa-

On the 16th of February I started with my guide, a Spaniard, who had been recommended to me, and two native Mexicans, who were residents of St. Antonio. Our first day's journey was pleasant and agreeable, the road being very good, and the sky serene and clear. In the evening, about dark, we encamped in a fertile plain.

The next morning we again set forward, and immediately entered the thick wood through which we had to pass to get to St. Antonio; the distance was about three days' journey, and we were under the necessity of taking this road in order to avoid the numerous hordes of petty officers, who infest the main road, and detain travellers on many frivolous pretences; our journey was therefore uninteresting, dull, and in many places tedious. For twenty-four hours previous to our arrival, we were drenched with continual rain, which swelled the rivers and brooks, and rendered them almost impassable. On the third day, about dark, we arrived at St. Antonio.

The town of St. Antonio is the capital of the province of Apachiera; it is small, and not very regularly built; many of the houses are of stone; the streets are narrow, and, not being paved, are very muddy. The public buildings are large and spacious; they are built of freestone, and form the east side of a large square. In the centre of the square is placed a statue of copper gilt, as large as life. The market of this town is well supplied, and beef may be bought here at two cents a pound; fish

port my mules out of the country, without being subjected to very heavy exactions from the towns through which I should pass; this was not done from any legal authority, but the police was so badly regulated in many of the frontier towns, that it would be winked at by the officers of government: I therefore deemed it most advisable to go over the mountains by a circuitous route, and for that purpose set about procuring a guide who would conduct me with safety on my journey.

It was some time before I could procure a person who was going over the mountain; at last one was presented, who brought a letter from a Spanish gentleman of my acquaintance, recommending him very highly. His appearance did not prepossess me very greatly in his favour; his height was about six feet; his countenance was dark, and shaded by an enormous pair of whiskers; a large pair of dark eyes, which glared with uncommon fierceness, completed one of the most savage countenances I ever saw. His terms were very moderate, and I employed him. He would be ready in two days, and the morning of the third we agreed to start.

The next morning, Edom, who had hitherto been the constant companion of my journey, was missing. I enquired of my landlord where he was, and he informed me that he had not seen him since the night before. As he had never before gone away without obtaining leave of me, I felt alarmed lest he should have met with some difficulty. In the course of the day I searched for him in different parts of the town, but without effect. The next day's search was equally unsuccessful. As it was

vice, I was determined to wait some time, in order, if possible, to recover him. My guide was much chagrined at this determination, and endeavoured to persuade me to go on, and leave word for my negro to join me when I reached Nachitoches. I would not consent, and, after some altercation, he agreed to remain till I could go on.

Four or five days elapsed, and still no intelligence of my man. I began to doubt whether I should ever see him more, when, as I was sitting at my window, considering what was to be done, he entered the room. I received him with joy, and after the first salutations, begged him to tell me where he had been. He informed me that he went into the street on the evening of his departure, soon after I went to bed, intending to take a short walk; he had just turned the corner of a street, when he heard the cry of murder repeated several times, which seemed to proceed from a cellar at no great distance. He hastened to the spot, and when he came there he found a woman, apparently in the agonies of death, and a man standing near her; as soon as the man perceived him, he started, and in a few minutes was out of sight. The guard, who had been attracted by the noise, now coming up, and seeing no one near the spot but him, and the woman being speechless, took him into custody, and would not allow him to speak to any one till the arrival of the alcaid, who arrived in town the day before. They would not release him, till the woman who had partly recovered was brought, and certified that

I was glad to see him, and as I now had nothing to detain me, sent word to my guide that I would start the next morning. Accordingly, about 3 o'clock in the morning he came to my lodgings, and we commenced our journey. We had not proceeded more than five leagues from the town, before a violent storm of rain came on, which obliged us to take shelter in a miller's house. It rained incessantly for three or four hours, and, the roads becoming choked with water, we concluded to remain here all night. The miller received us with much hospitality, and cheerfully agreed to our remaining with him till the next day. His family consisted of his wife, three daughters, and a son about sixteen, who assisted his father in the mill.

The next morning we again set forward, the roads having become more dry. The sky was serene and clear, and we entered the forest with the hopes of having a pleasant and delightful journey. We encamped about eight o'clock.

In the morning we again started, and proceeded with as much speed as the road would allow, it being in many places covered with underwood, and a rich long grass, which gets matted, and renders the travelling in some places heavy and disagreeable. The climate is here dry and healthy, and the soil very rich and fruitful; it is of a thick black loam, and covered with a rich luxuriant grass, which is much esteemed by cattle.

We again started forward, and about ten o'clock entered more deeply into the wood. I ob[illegible] to [illegible] manner of proceedi[illegible]

out, as the other was more circuitous and not so often travelled. I told him he might continue; and we proceeded with difficulty through the long grass and underwood, which were here very thick. About dark I proposed stopping, but he assured me that there was a large spot which was open and clear, only a few miles ahead, and that it would be best to go there. About 8 o'clock we arrived in an open space, which seemed to have been formed by the cutting down of the trees. Before I had time to make any observations, a loud whistle caused me to turn round, and I saw advancing towards me, a large party, armed with guns and cutlasses. I seized my gun, but they instantly ran towards me, and in an instant I was on the ground. They now blindfolded me, and I was led along between two of them, who held me by the arms. They went forward a considerable distance, and then began to descend, which they continued for a considerable time. The dampness of the air, I felt very perceptibly, which induced me to think that I was a considerable way under ground.

Whither I was going, or why taken in this manner, I could not account, unless they were robbers, into whose hands I had been betrayed by my perfidious guide.

After being conducted is this manner for near a quarter of an hour, they stopped, and in a few minutes I heard a voice, whose commanding tone induced me to believe him to be a man of authority, speak in the Spanish language, and order me to be unbound. They immediately loosened the bandage, and I found myself in a small passage which was lighted by four torches. A

persons, whose ferocious countenances declared them capable of performing any diabolical deed which might be suggested to them.

He surveyed me some time in silence, and then turning from me, spoke in a low tone of voice to one who stood near him, and departed. The one to whom he spake now took a torch, and beckoned me to follow him; I did so, and after going along several windings of the rock, all of which I perceived had doors in them, he reached the extremity of one, and opening a door which was made of iron, he pointed in silence that I might enter. When I got in he shut the door, and I heard him turn a key. My reflections were gloomy, and I felt as though I was shut out from all the world.

In about an hour, an old woman whom I had not before seen, made her appearance. She brought with her a cold fowl, and some coffee, which she set down; she then went away without saying a word. In a few minutes she returned, with a matrass and bedding, which she put on a cot, and made me up a comfortable bed.

I had hitherto preserved a profound silence, and I saw nothing in the face of this old woman which was an inducement for me to break it. She was below the middle size; her countenance sallow, and much blackened by the sun. She had a very long nose, and one of her eyes had been put out in some squabble. Her whole appearance was the most ugly I had ever seen in womankind. As soon as she had made my bed she departed, locking the door after her, and preserving a profound silence during the whole of her visit. In the morning she came again,

self. As they had not searched my pockets when they brought me into the cavern, I had still pen, ink, and paper, besides a considerable sum of money, which I secreted against a time of need, for I had an idea that I should yet be enabled to escape from my present situation if they allowed me to remain alive, which, from the manner they treated me, I had no doubt they would.

I continued in this manner for three days, when on the third night I heard a considerable noise and bustle, which seemed to be some violent contention among the band of robbers, for I had now no doubt of their being such.

In about an hour my door was unlocked, and a man whom I had not before seen, entered, and advanced towards me. I kept my eye fixed upon him, expecting he had come with an intention of attacking me. At last he asked me in Spanish if I understood any thing of medicine. As I had a small chest of medicines with me, I did not doubt they had concluded from this that I was a physician, and I answered him in the affirmative. He immediately left me, and did not return for near an hour. When he came back he opened the door, and bade me follow him. I immediately went out, and we proceeded in the same direction I had come, until we came to a turning which branched off to the right; we turned into it, and after proceeding for some time, he opened a door which led me into a large hall; he now motioned me to sit down. All was silent as the grave, for not a word had been spoken from the time we left my chamber. The

surrounded me, seemed to give a gloomy horror to my situation, and for the moment I felt the impression of fear stealing over me.

In a short time the man who conducted me here came back, and desired me to follow him. His accent was respectful, and his whole behaviour seemed to be much altered from what it had been. I followed him in silence, and a few minutes brought me to a small room, in which was a bed with curtains, and the other furniture was rich and elegant; two lamps of silver with six wicks, hung in the centre of the room, and a sideboard, which stood on one side, contained a rich service of plate. I was led to the bedside, and a man undrew the curtains and addressed me in the Spanish language. The moment he spoke I knew him to be the captain of the band. He told me that he was very ill, and in great pain; that their physician had been killed the night before; that seeing I had a box of medicines, they believed me to be a physician; if I was, and would cure him, he should not be ungrateful for it. After a short pause he added, if, however, you should attempt to take my life, in hopes by that means to effect your liberty, be assured that it will be all in vain, and that the most lingering death will await you: I have those who will watch your proceedings, and on the least appearance of my growing worse you will be put in close confinement.

Although this information rendered it hazardous for me to undertake any thing for him, yet there was no alternative, for he assured me I should not be allowed to leave my room unless I consented to use my best endea-

I accordingly felt his pulse, and found him in a high fever, which, from appearances, I judged to be of an inflammatory kind. I told him I conceived bleeding to be absolutely necessary; and took from his arm eight ounces of blood, and gave him some medicine which would be of service in relieving his pain. Some refreshments were brought to me, and I continued with him until he fell into a profound sleep.

In about three hours I was again sent for, and found my patient much better than I had expected, he being entirely free from pain. He expressed himself very thankful to me for my assistance, and entered freely into conversation; in the course of which, he assured me that I need be under no apprehension for my personal safety, as long as I did not attempt to make my escape, but that whenever I attempted that, he could no longer protect me.

In a few days the captain was so far recovered as to be able to leave his bed for a short time each day. During this time I continued his constant companion, and he seemed to take pleasure in my company; at night I always retired to the room which I first occupied, and seldom left it till after breakfast.

I one morning went into his room, and was much surprised to hear him return the compliment of the morning in good English. He laughingly told me he thought he could speak his native tongue best. I then understood he was a native of the United States, but of what particular part I could not learn, as he had travelled all over

weak, and I was frequently left alone in his room. Perceiving this, he told me that there was a small room to the right which contained a few books, but whether any thing worthy of attention or not he did not know, as he seldom read any, and the room had not been used since Frederick, a young man who formerly lived with them, died. I went in, and found about one hundred volumes, ranged on shelves in a very neat and orderly manner. Among them were many good English and Spanish authors, which I judged from appearance had been taken from travellers. With them I passed the time as agreeably as could be expected in my situation, and the uncertainty when I should again be at my liberty.

In about three weeks the captain was perfectly recovered, and one evening there was to be given a little entertainment on account of his recovery. I remained with him a great part of the day, and at night, when I was about to retire, he told me that he should be glad of my company to supper that evening. I could not with propriety refuse, and about eight we entered the hall which served them for their nightly banquets. They were already assembled, and on his entrance they all arose and welcomed him with shouts of applause. He bowed, and took his seat at the head of the table, and directed me to a seat by the side of him.

I now had liberty to look around and observe the room in which we were. It was a natural excavation of the mountain, but had been considerably widened by the art of man; the roof was near fifteen feet high, [illegible] from

fusion of every thing which could provoke or gratify the appetite.

The company consisted of about thirty men, whose aspects bespoke them familiar with guilt, and who were only intent on the gratification of their sensual appetites. The captain, whose sickness had rendered him mild in the chamber, now assumed that fierce and determined air which was peculiar to his profession, and for a moment I could not perceive that he was the same man.

After supper the wine began to circulate, and noise and mirth soon reigned throughout the cavern. The captain drank very sparingly of the wine, and at an early hour he retired to his chamber, being still too weak to set up a great while at a time. I accompanied him to the door, and then retired to my room, meditating on the means most likely to effect my escape from a place of such wretchedness and infamy.

I repaired in the morning to the library, as I now called it, from the circumstance of its containing all the books in the cavern, and was soon joined by the captain, who, taking a chair nearly opposite me, commenced an animated conversation on the duties of religion, and the *divine attributes of the Deity*. At first I supposed that he was jesting, and that I should soon hear some of the stale observations of Thomas Paine, or others of the same school; but I was mistaken, and his language was so nervous and elegant, and he expatiated with such clearness and perspicuity, that I listened with fixed attention. When he ceased speaking, I ventured to hint to him that the sentiments which he had just now expressed were not congenial to his present mode of life. "I acknowledge it," said he, "but the lips of men oftentimes express

sentiments which they cannot but acknowledge the justness of, though at the same time their actions are directly opposite to them."

He now changed the conversation to the books which were in the room, and in the course of it mentioned the young man who had taken so much care of them, whom he called Frederick. I ventured to ask him who he was, and what was the cause of his death. At these questions his countenance changed, and he sat for some minutes silent: at last he replied, "I have no objections to answering the questions you put to me as far as it is in my power, provided you will solemnly promise never to relate it to any one here." I without hesitation made the required promise, and he proceeded as follows: "It is impossible for me to tell you correctly who he was; but thus much I know, he was an American, and I judged born in one of the southern states; his manners were mild, and he acquired the good will of the most ferocious of our band; he was with us about twelve months, but, as his constitution was delicate, he fell into a decline, which carried him off in about three months after he took to his bed; he selected all the books which you now see, and arranged them in this room, and this was his chief amusement. I used my best endeavours with the band to have him liberated, but without effect, as there are many among us who have less feeling than the brute creation, and they were fearful that he would betray them, although he assured them in the most solemn manner that he would never divulge their place of concealment."

Here the ferocity of his countenance was changed, and a tear trickled down his cheek; he wiped it hastily away, and then said, "Sir, it may seem surprising to you that

I should be so much affected at the death of a fellow creature, who have been instrumental in the death of hundreds; but there are moments when the principles which were inculcated by my ever respected parents will prevail, and triumph over the vicious principles I have imbibed. To show you that I do not overrate the talents of this young man, I will show you a paper which he wrote a short time before his death, and which seems to be a final farewell to all his relations." He now rose, opened the drawer of a writing desk, handed me a paper, and left the room.

---

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Contents of the paper given me by the captain—Farewell verses—The band prepares for an expedition—Resolution of keeping me confined during their absence—Ineffectual attempt to discover their route—Return of the gang—Quarrel between the captain and one of the men—resolution of the captain to give me my liberty—Interesting conversation with him.*

Upon an examination of the paper which was handed me by the captain, I found that it contained no regular narrative, but what was evidently written when the mind

stretched on their extended couch the innocent and the guilty, when all nature rests, and every thing is silent as the grave, I, who am fast going to the tomb, who have no friend near, no kind mother to smooth the bed of death, and render the path more cheering, am alone awake, and alive to the miseries of my situation. Fancy already paints my tender and affectionate mother bowed by the weight of sorrow almost to the grave; and my sprightly sisters, whose affectionate endearments often cheered me in the hour of despondency, now sitting in mournful sadness, and expressing unavailing wishes for the return of their beloved brother; but I am gone, gone for ever. My mother, never shall I again be encircled in your arms, never will you again behold your lost son. Shut from all society that can with propriety be considered human, oppressed with a disease which is as certain as the sting of death, I have no hope this side the grave. Could I but soften the hearts of those who hold me in captivity, I might yet behold the beams of the rising sun, yet be clasped in the arms of my affectionate parent, and breathe out the remainder of my life on her maternal bosom. But no; hapiness is not to be mine in this world. The pleasure of once more beholding those who are dear to me, is denied, and I must linger out the remainder of my days in a dungeon, surrounded with wretches whose hearts are steeled against the feelings of humanity.—

"But why do I complain? has it not pleased Him in "whose hands are the issues of life [illegible] death," thus to

where joy for ever reigns,—where infinite mercy, and infinite love, are united as firm as the immutability of God, and lasting as eternity. To *Him*, then, I go, who has declared himself to be "the resurrection and the life, and that whosoever believeth in him shall not perish, but have everlasting life."

"Farewell, then, my much loved friends; although I shall probably never see you again in this world, yet when you come to die, may you fall asleep in Jesus, and awake on the morning of the resurrection to a glorious immortality; may you go through the dark valley of the shadow of death rejoicing, and when we meet again it will be in that place where sickness and sorrow will be done away, and where pure pleasures will exist for countless ages."

I was much affected at the reading of this piece, and for a moment forgot my own misery to contemplate that of an unfortunate being, whose bright prospects in life had been thus cruelly blasted. Enclosed in the paper there were some verses, which were more regular in their composition, and so applicable, both to the young man's situation and my own, that I here insert them.

"Adieu, sweet scenes of former hours,
Adieu, ye shades, adieu, ye bowers,
A lasting, long adieu;
Where erst in infancy I strayed,
Or in the grove, or in the mead,
With pleasures ever new.

"Anna, adieu; alas! no more

When, by the twilight's fading gleam,
Adown the gently gliding stream
I rov'd, with heaven and you.

"No more, where modern Xanthus laves,
Through Hartford's plains, its sacred waves,
Nor where the riv'let purls;
Nor in the sad, sequester'd gloom,
Where, twin'd around my mother's tomb,
The pliant ivy curls:

"No more the sylvan scenes to view,
No more to join the jocund crew,
Shall I again return;
But, doom'd from native home to dwell,
Or else within a cavern's cell,
I'm left alone to mourn.

"Thus, when the lightning's vivid flash,
Rends to its base the stately ash,
Or the majestic oak,
In living death the arbour stands,
The plumage from the boughs descends
Beneath the dreadful stroke.

"Sweet girl, when, in thy circling arms,
Protected by thy magic charms,
Shall I resign my fears?
When shall this bosom lose its wo—
When will these eyes forget to flow
For days of other years?

"But love, alas! nor sighs, nor tears,
Nor all the scenes of former years,
One ray of hope diffuse;
But rash despair my bosom fills,

The reading of these lines plunged me into a profound melancholy, and I could not but fancy a strong similarity between my situation and that of the author; still, I was blessed with health, and my constitution being naturally strong, I did not absolutely despair of finding my way out of the cave again; but by what means, or how long before they could be put in execution, it was impossible for me to tell. As I was blindfolded when I entered the cave, and had not since been able to form any judgment of the manner in which they came in, I judged it impossible for me, without some assistance, to be able to make my escape.

The captain and myself were now constant companions. He had recovered so far as to be able to go out with his troop, and I understood they were preparing for an expedition which would detain the greater part of them out for a number of days. I judged this would be the time for me to make my escape; but one evening after supper, (for I had now supped with them for some time,) they desired me to retire, as they had something confidential to propose to the band: I felt a presentiment that it was something which would operate against me, but rose and retired.

In about an hour the captain came to my apartment: I saw vexation visibly portrayed in his countenance, and judged he had unpleasant news to communicate to me. After a silence of some time he informed me, that, as the band was to leave the cave the next morning, they had

enabled to have got you the liberty of the hall; but I will teach him better things than to oppose me, before he is much older." He walked the room several times with a quick pace, and then turning to me, added, "but don't be down hearted; we shall not be gone long, and if you want any of the books which are in the other room, you shall have them." I thanked him for his attention, and requested a few books which I named. After a little more conversation he left me.

In a few minutes the old woman entered with a basket of books, and, as she possessed all that curiosity which is common to the female sex, and had lately become very loquacious, I was in hopes of getting a little information from her. After I had praised her manner of cooking a fowl, and prepared her with many well turned compliments, I asked her if she knew what route the band intended steering. "The Lord of heaven knows," she replied, "for I am sure it is impossible for any one else to know, they keep it such a secret; although for the matter of that, I have always told them they might as well trust me, for I should as soon think of going without eating as to mention it to a living soul." But surely, said I, a person who is so useful as you are, ought at least to know where they are going. "So I have told them a thousand times," said the old woman, "and when William came into the kitchen just now to get his water boots, says I to him, You suppose one can't tell where you are a going, but I will lay my life that it is another tramp to the river." How far do you call it to the river, my good madam, said I, in a careless tone, although I was much interested in the answer. "Why,

ance of the captain, who frowned most terribly upon the poor woman, and bid her in a stern voice to quit the room, put an end to our conversation at a moment when I expected to reap some benefit from it.

After walking the room for some time, the captain stopped, and in a voice at once stern and commanding, censured my conduct for talking to the woman. "You know very well," said he, "that I am to a certain degree responsible for the many liberties with which you have been indulged since you came here: as long as you remain quiet, and make no attempts to leave this place, you shall be treated with as much kindness as possible; but the moment you attempt to gain any information respecting the situation of the place in which you are confined, a severe punishment awaits you." Having said this, he shut the door and departed, leaving me more disappointed at not gaining the information I sought, than alarmed at his threats.

The next day the old lady again appeared, but I judged it not prudent to speak to her. My books were my only employment, and I was sometimes busied in conjectures on that part of the old woman's discourse which she had left unfinished. I could not make it out, although I believed myself to be nearer the territories of the United States than I had before thought.

The time now passed heavily away; but on the fifth day, at about four o'clock in the afternoon, I heard noises which induced me to think that the party had returned

ity, and told me that he wanted me to do something for his lieutenant, who had been badly wounded. I went to the chamber of the lieutenant, and found that he had received a severe sabre cut in the thick part of his thigh, and that he was very weak from the loss of blood. I had still some of the leaves which had been given me by the Mnacedeus tribe of Indians, who described them as being very excellent in curing fresh cut wounds: I sent for my chest, and applied some of them to the cut, at the same time directing him to keep quiet, and not to drink any ardent spirits.

I returned to the room, and found the party preparing for a grand festival, which was to celebrate their return to their habitation; the great hall was lighted, and all was bustle, in the kitchen. About ten o'clock the supper was ready, and I again took my seat by the side of the captain, who appeared in an unusually good humour. They soon began to offer copious libations to Bacchus, and noisy mirth reigned throughout the hall. I soon saw that perfect cordiality did not reign among the whole party. Secret whisperings, and now and then an oath of defiance, seemed to show that they were determined to oppose whoever attempted any thing contrary to their wishes. The captain's countenance now assumed that gloomy ferocity which was the forerunner of a storm, and he sat in sullen silence. At last, Jim, who had been the foremost in opposing my having the liberty of the hall, asked the captain if he intended to divide it equally with them. His countenance now assumed the liveliest red: "Do you think that I am to be dictated to?" said he. "No, captain," re[illegible] Jim, "nor are we fools enough

does not deserve it." "You scoundrel," exclaimed the captain, "do you grumble at my authority; I will blow you into eternity in a moment:" with this he drew out a brace of pistols and fired at Jim, who fell, and the captain prepared to finish his work with his sabre. The rest of the company now gathered round, and endeavoured to appease the captain's rage; they were as humble now in their intreaties for the life of the culprit, as they had before been menacing in their deportment. At their earnest request the captain agreed to spare his life, but put him into close confinement until he should recover, when he was to be tried by the laws of the gang.

The captain retired to his room, and I judged it best for me to go to mine, as he was unfit for conversation. In the morning he sent for me, and when I came in I found him counting some money. He motioned for me to sit down, and when he had put his gold in a paper he requested me to inform him how far I intended travelling when I was taken. I informed him, and he then told me that he had resolved to give me my liberty. "My reasons for so doing," said he, "are a profound secret to the whole gang; but I feel for your situation; you are deserving of a better fate than awaits you here. I feel a presentiment that my stay here is not long, and if I should be killed I know of no one that would afford you protection."

My feelings were such that I remained silent and motionless. The captain, perceiving my surprise, said to me, "I don't doubt you are much surprised at my determination. You considered yourself, and with good reason, among a band of robbers who show mercy to no

us of this gang who are a disgrace to civilized man, and who think themselves at the summit of human happiness if they have an opportunity to hurl distress and misery among their fellow creatures. Although I am captain of this gang, and may be considered as countenancing every act of cruelty which is committed, and as having no feelings but those of rapine and plunder, yet a spark will sometimes fly off from those principles which were inculcated with care by fond and indulgent parents. My prospects in life were as bright, in the morning of my days, as those of any young man. I laid my head on my pillow at night but to devise new pleasures, and waked in the morning but to enjoy them; but dissipation soon became an attendant on my steps, and from first plunging into debt, and then into dishonour, my name became as much hated and despised as it had before been honoured and respected." His countenance discovered the most violent agitation, and his whole frame shook with convulsion while he spoke: when he had ended, he turned from me.

I now assured him of my gratitude for his intended favours, and told him that any thing which it was in my power to do for him, he might rest assured should be done by me with pleasure. "From the late conversation I have had with you," said I, "and from the confidence with which you have favoured me, I have reasons for believing that there are moments when you feel a degree of horror at your present pursuits and practices. If you wish or expect to enjoy any happiness here or hereafter, you must abandon the [illegible] associate [illegible]

that I shall do it with pleasure. As it is, I am truly grateful to you for the favour you intend me, and have no doubt you will readily agree with me that there is more pleasure in giving than in receiving the means of happiness; and that, in contemplating its benign influence, you perceive both the propriety and the excellency of that divine aphorism, "It is more blessed to give than to receive."

He remained for some time silent, and at last observed, "Your observation is correct: I cannot expect any happiness here, nor do I receive any only when I am sunk in intoxication, and my passions have gained an ascendancy over my reason; then, for a moment, I feel insensible to every thing but the gratification of my appetites, and sink to rest in delusive happiness; but in the morning the phantom has fled, I am still the wretch I was the morning before, and happiness seems to be farther removed than ever. As it respects assistance, you can be of no service to me: I am fixed, and must here drag out a miserable existence until death terminates the scene. I shall call for you to night at twelve o'clock, but you must solemnly swear that you will not speak, nor stir from the place where I shall lead you, until you hear the report of a pistol, and that you will then take the road which leads you straight forward."

I readily consented: he then observed, "You had some property which it will be impossible for me to restore to you, as we are much in want of good horses; but you will receive this gold," said he, handing me a parcel, "as a compensation, and this," he added, presenting me

summoned him to the hall: he bid me remember twelve that night, and left me.

---

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Preparations for leaving the cavern—Melancholy fate of Edom—Departure—Precautions observed by the captain—Reflections on my former situation and present prospects—Get information of my journey—Arrival at Natchitoches.*

I RETIRED to my room, and began to make preparations for my departure. The late conversations I had had with the the captain, convinced me that he was not entirely steeled against the calls of conscience, though his pride was yet too great to permit him to leave the company he was associated with.

I had hitherto heard nothing of my faithful negro, who had been separated from me on being taken into the cavern, and all my attempts to get any information of him had hitherto proved fruitless. When my dinner was served, I sent a note to the captain, requesting the liberty of seeing him. My request being granted, in about half an hour I repaired to his chamber.

After a little common conversation, I told the captain that the reason of my visit was to inquire about my negro. I observed to him that he had been of great service to me in all my travels, and almost my constant companion

by civilized man; that in my dangers and perils he had shown an attachment to me superior to that generally evinced by a servant to his master. "I am sorry," said the captain, "that it is not in my power to give you any pleasant information of him; but, the second night after his arrival here, he had a quarrel with one of the band, who stabbed him with a sabre, and he fell dead at his feet. I should have mentioned this circumstance to you sooner, but I did not wish to give you any uneasiness."

I remained silent, for my feelings were such that I could not give them utterance. The captain saw I was affected, and said, "It is with regret, I perceive, that you receive intelligence of the death of your negro, but it was impossible for me to avoid it, and I hope it will not cloud your present expected happiness; all depends on your being secret and active in your exertions after you leave the cave, and I think it advisable that you should leave me until such time as I send for you, as our being together may excite suspicion after you are gone." I bowed in silence and immediately left the room.

About twelve o'clock my door turned slowly upon its hinges, and the captain entered; he bowed and seated himself. We both remained silent for some moments; at last he said, "Are you ready?" I told him I was. "Let us be gone then," said he, "for we have no time to lose." I arose, and in a few minutes we left the chamber, and proceeded in silence through a number of

for us to be discovered, as we are at some distance from the rooms which are inhabited by the men." I submitted in silence, and in a few minutes he took me by the hand, and conducted me along the passage. The air now became more damp, and I judged from the feeling that we were on a level with the sea, or some neighbouring river.

After walking half an hour, as near as I could judge, we began to rise a steep ascent, which was winding, and in many places uneven. I now began to feel the fresh air of night, and heard the wind whistling in the trees. I felt revived, and insensibly increased my pace. In a few minutes the captain whispered, you are now free from the cavern, but speak not a word lest you should be betrayed.

Words cannot describe my joy at once more being free from my dismal abode. I involuntarily clasped his hand, and we proceeded in silence for some considerable distance, oftentimes going through a winding path which rendered it impossible for me to judge exactly the route we were pursuing. In about an hour he stopped, and told me that I was now in a road which would lead me on my journey, but that I must beware not to stir until I heard the report of a pistol; he advised me, as I valued my existence, to pursue the road which I should find before me. He informed me that about a mile on the road I should find a horse ready saddled, which I must take, and pursue my journey with all speed.

Here he made a full stop, and seemed violently agitated. At last, grasping my hand with both of his, he "Fare-

anxiously expect your arrival, and will receive you with rejoicing, whilst I am an outcast and a villain, and my name is only remembered to be execrated for my baseness." He again shook me by the hand, and, after cautioning me not to remove the bandage from my eyes until I should hear the report of the pistol, he left me.

I listened with some attention to hear in what direction his footsteps sounded, but after he had taken three or four steps, it was impossible for me to hear the least sound, except the rustling of the leaves on the trees. I waited with anxious impatience for the report of the pistol, and was many times on the point of tearing the bandage from my eyes. About an hour had elapsed, when I heard the distant report of a pistol, which could be just distinguished.

I instantly tore the bandage from my eyes, and beheld myself at the entrance of a road which led along a rich and fertile valley. I pursued the path with eagerness, and, after walking about a mile, saw a horse tied to a tree, which I instantly loosed and mounted.

The day was just dawning, and my course lay through a level and fertile plain, where every thing had the most beautiful and lively appearance. Flowers, full and perfect, as though they had been cultivated by the hand of the florist, with all their captivating odours, and with all the variegated charms that colour and nature can produce, here, in the lap of elegance and beauty, decorated the smiling groves. Soft zephyrs gently breathed a thousand sweets, and the inhaled air gave a voluptuous glow of health and vigour that intoxicated my senses. The

this genial clime, and in more soft and modulated tones, warble their tender notes in unison with love and nature. Every thing here gave delight; and in the bright effulgence of the "god of day," which had just risen above the eastern horizon, and shed his beams around, I felt a glow of gratitude for that elevation which our all bountiful Creator had bestowed upon us. I felt gratitude for my liberation from the horrors of captivity, and from the society of wretches who were a disgrace to the human species; and it brought to my mind so forcibly the lines of a favourite poet, that I could not help exclaiming,

> "'Tis liberty alone that gives the flower
> Of fleeting life its lustre and perfume,
> And we are weeds without it."

At dark I encamped, after having come nearly thirty-five miles.

I now examined the gold which the captain had given me the preceding day, and found a liberal price for my mules, and as much more as a present from the captain. I had been about six weeks among them, and had it not been for the friendship of the captain, I should probably have been confined for my lifetime. I had, however, lost very little, except the company of my faithful negro, who had been the constant companion of my travels, and I now missed his society very much.

I arose very early in the morning, and proceeded on my journey. I was anxious to reach some place where I could gain information of the nearest route to the United States, for I did not know whether I was going towards that country or not. About noon I

pushed forward, in hopes of meeting some person who could give me the information I wanted. Night coming on obliged me to encamp, after having come thirty-eight miles.

I started forward in the morning, and at about eight o'clock overtook three men who were travelling on towards the Tuscarora tribe of Indians, to trade for furs. I enquired what distance I was from the United States, and they told me it was ninety miles to Natchitoches. This was the most agreeable intelligence I could receive; I thanked them, and rode forward with a much quicker pace. At night I encamped, after having come forty miles.

My next day's journey was through a fertile country; the soil is formed on a bed of limestone, which extends from west to east, and is covered by a rich black soil, which is generally about the depth of two feet, and in some places it is five or six. The weather was remarkably serene, and I travelled this day about thirty-five miles.

I started early the next morning, and about eight o'clock met two hunters, who were going out to get skins: they told me they left Natchitoches the preceding day, and should not return under three months. I rode on, and about three o'clock arrived in town, at my friend, Mr. Potter's, who received me with a hearty welcome.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Departure from Natchitoches for the Tuckapau town—General description of the town—Cultivation of the sugar cane much attended to—Apalusa town—Description of it—Departure for Gibsonport—Description of that town—Chickasaw nation—Nashville—Celebration of the fourth of July—Patriotism of the inhabitants—Elegant toasts—General description of Nashville—Leave Nashville—Some account of the enchanted mountain.*

MAY 10th, 1814. My arrival in Natchitoches had been unexpected by me, as I had intended coming through the Tuckapau and Apalusa towns, and my arrangements for that purpose were such as to induce me to repair to these places. After remaining a short time with my friends, and recruiting my spirits, I set forward on my journey.

As the route was entirely through a country which has very little to recommend it to the attention of the traveller, or through such parts of the country as I have already described, I shall avoid a tedious and uninteresting description of my journey, and shall conduct my readers immediately to the Tuckapau town.

The Tuckapau town was originally settled by Frenchmen, but is now within the limits of the United States: it is situated on the Tallapoose river, which is the north-east branch of the Alabama or Mobile river. This runs

through the high country of the Oakfuskee tribe, in a westerly direction, and is full of rocks, falls, and shoals, until it reaches the Tuckafaches, when it becomes deep and quiet: from thence its course is west about forty miles to the town of the Tuckapaus. This river is three hundred yards broad, and fifteen or twenty feet deep in the time of freshets.

The cultivation of the sugar cane has been considerably attended to in this town. It was first planted by Madame Somor, a lady who has displayed considerable enterprise in its cultivation. Her success has induced a number of other persons to try the experiment, and sugar is now raised in considerable quantities, and will, at some future period, become an article of much consequence to its inhabitants. The success which has attended the cultivation of the sugar cane in this place, has induced many of the inhabitants of Georgia to try the experiment, and the result has been, that very favourable crops have been raised, and it is thought the cultivation of it would be attended with much success in Georgia and South-Carolina, and enable our country, at no very distant period, to become independent of the West-India islands for supplies of that article.

Around the town are large prairies, interspersed with tufts of trees, which have a very handsome and picturesque appearance. The country is very unhealthy in the rainy season, which is owing to the low situation of the town and the dampness of the air. The river is only navigable in the time of freshets, the other seasons of the year the water being so low as to render it impossible even for

opens into a large lake on the right: the other branch runs about nine hundred miles, and empties into the sea.

This lake is large and extensive, and empties itself into the Bistash. There are large numbers of alligators in this lake, which are said to be very fat. During the last war, a number of men employed themselves in catching these alligators, from one of which they would extract four or five gallons of oil, that answered all the purposes of the best fish oil. From the large number of alligators which are said to infest this lake, there is no doubt but that four or five thousand gallons of this oil might be procured in a year.

After my business was settled at the Tuckapau, I started from thence to the Apalusa town, which is thirty-two miles distant. The houses in the latter place are many of them neatly built, and there is a handsome church, built by the missionaries. There are in this town about five hundred inhabitants, who manufacture the most of their own wearing apparel. It is a thriving little place, and the inhabitants have the appearance of being very healthy.

I here met with three men who were going through the wilderness to the state of Tennessee, and I agreed to join them. We were ready to start in a few days, and travelled with considerable expedition. My companions had been purchasing furs, and trading about the Apalusas, for about six months, and one of them told me he calculated

ion that they would have done much better to have descended the river to Natches.

We arrived, without any accident, at Gibsonport, in the Missisippi territory, where we staid a few days to rest ourselves, and recruit our horses; during which time I collected the following particulars.

The town of Gibsonport is situated on a small creek, which is about thirty-five miles from the river: it has been settled but a short time, and is a very thriving little place, containing about fifty houses and four hundred inhabitants. The inhabitants manufacture the most of their own clothing. The land is rich, producing from sixty to seventy bushels of Indian corn to the acre, and generally thirty-five or forty bushels of wheat. The town is very healthy, and there is not a resident physician belonging to the town.

In four days we again started, and proceeded through a beautiful and rich tract of country to Nashville. We saw nothing worthy of notice until we arrived at the principal town of the Chickasaw Indians, a famous nation of warriors, who inhabit the country on the east side of the Missisippi, on the head branches of the Tombigbee, Mobile, and Yazoo rivers, and north of the country of the Choctaws. Their country is an extensive plain, tolerably well watered from springs, and of a pretty good soil. The number of souls in this nation may be about two thousand, of which five hundred are fighting men. The town is situated on the side of a hill, and the inhabitants are industrious, and a few of them attend to agriculture.

The land on this road is rich, producing corn, rye

grows frequently to the height of fifteen or sixteen feet, but more generally about ten or twelve, and is in thickness from the size of a goose quill to that of two inches diameter; sometimes, though seldom, it is larger. When it is slender it never grows higher than from four to seven feet. It shoots up in one summer, but produces no leaves until the following year. It is an evergreen, and is perhaps the most nourishing food for cattle upon earth. No other milk or butter has such flavour and richness as that which is produced from cows which feed upon cane. Horses which feed upon it work nearly as well as if they were fed upon corn, provided care is taken to give them, once in three or four days, a handful of salt; otherwise this food is apt to injure them. The rye-grass, when it arrives at maturity, is from two feet and a half to three and a half high; the head and beard resemble the real rye, and sometimes produce a small grain, long and slender, not unlike rye. The clover is in no respect different from that which is cultivated in other parts of America, but it is more coarse and luxuriant. There is a variety of other kinds of grass found in different parts of the forest, but they do not grow with such luxuriance as those which I have mentioned.

On the 3d of July I arrived at Nashville, and found all bustle and preparation for the celebration of the birthday of the United States. Every citizen, from the day-labourer, to the man who could count thousands, was anxiously anticipating the moment, when the thunder of cannon would announce the dawn of that day which gave his nation a rank among the empires of the world.

My feelings were in unison with those of the people, and I felt desirous of partaking in the festivities of the day. A polite invitation which I received from a gentleman who was present at the inn when I alighted, accompanied with a ticket which gave me admission to one of the principal dinner parties the next day, gave me a favourable opportunity for gratifying my wishes in this respect. The politeness and attention which I received from a number of gentlemen with whom I was not personally acquainted, can only be accounted for by my being in a land of *freemen*, with whom hospitality and politeness are not only natural, but easy.

The next morning the dawning of day was ushered in by the discharge of seventeen cannon, and joy and mirth seemed to have taken possession of the town. The day was remarkably fine, and a light shower of rain which had fallen the preceding day, had contributed to lay the dust, and rendered the promenading pleasant and agreeable.

About ten o'clock the different independent companies paraded through the town, and exhibited a very martial appearance. Although many of the citizens were absent on military duty, defending their country from foreign invasion on its northern or western frontiers, yet the spirit of the inhabitants was not damped by this partial depopulation, and there is no doubt, had the exigency of the public service required it, but that the Tennesseeans would have turned out to a man, and rallied around the standard of their country.

and reputation. The solemnities were concluded with a short and impressive address to the throne of grace. The procession was again formed, and proceeded in regular order to the principal tavern, where a plentiful and elegant dinner was provided.

The dinner-hall was decorated in a style of neatness and elegance which gave much satisfaction. Paintings representing some of the most distinguished naval and military battles of the war were hung in conspicuous places; portraits of the most distinguished officers in the American service, decorated the sides of the hall, and the whole interspersed with festoons of roses, and wreaths of laural, which had a very novel and pleasing effect, and gave animation and variety to the scene.

At two o'clock, the party, consisting of about ninety gentlemen, sat down to a dinner, which for the variety of its dishes, and the delicacy and costliness of its viands, challenged the cities of New-York or Philadelphia to exceed. When all was arranged, a short and elegant prayer was delivered by one of the clergymen who had officiated during the day. This being done, each one took his seat, and mirth and hilarity reigned throughout the assembly.

After the cloth was removed, a number of appropriate toasts were drank, which at once displayed the spirit of the people, and the contempt in which they held any foreign invasion. The distinguished chiefs of the revolutionary war were not forgotten, while those who were then toiling, or had recently bled in the service of their country, received the well-earned tribute of praise. I

"The memory of the immortal WASHINGTON—He has built his own mausoleum, the grateful hearts of happy millions of freemen.

"The DAY we celebrate—May our posterity preserve inviolate the liberties which are transmitted to them by their ancestors.

"Brigadier-general NASH, who fell on the 4th Oct. 1777—He was a patriot in times which "tried men's souls;" may our youth not only venerate the name, but emulate the example of so distinguished a chieftain.

"The memory of the immortal LAWRENCE, who gloriously fell fighting in defence of his country's rights.

"How sleep the brave, who sink to rest
With all their country's wishes blest.
When spring, with dewy fingers cold,
Returns to deck their hallowed mould,
She there shall dress a sweeter sod
Than fancy's feet have ever trod."

The day was spent with the utmost good humour, and in the evening we all separated for our respective homes with order and decency. Our late festivities might with propriety be styled the "feast of reason and the flow of soul."

Nashville is the chief town of Mero district, Davidson county, and is pleasantly situated on the south bank of Cumberland river, where it is about two hundred yards broad. It was called Nashville in honour of brigadier-general Nash, who fell at the battle of Germantown. The town is regularly laid out, and well built, and contains about one thousand inhabitants. It has a court-house, and is the seat of the courts held semi-annually for the district of Mero, and of the courts of pleas and quarter

sessions for Davidson county. There are two houses for public worship, besides a Methodist chapel. Here is also an academy, which is handsomely endowed, and well supplied with teachers.

The lands about Nashville are rich, and divided by the farmers into first, second, and third quality. Land of the first quality will bear Indian corn or hemp, but it will not bear wheat without being reduced. Land of the second quality does not bear wheat to advantage until it has been reduced by two or three crops of corn, hemp, tobacco, or cotton. Land of the third quality bears every kind of grain that is usually sown on dry ground in the Atlantic states. It is asserted as a common thing for the land to produce from seventy to eighty bushels of Indian corn to the acre. The soil is deep and light, being a small mixture of sand with a black earth; hence the farmers assert that it will prove favourable to the culture of all kinds of roots, as well as of indigo and cotton.

I left Nashville on the 12th of July, and proceeded on my journey to Knoxville, which is the largest town in the state. On my route I passed over Cumberland mountain, which, in its whole extent from the Great Kanhawa to the Tennessee river, consists of the most stupendous piles of craggy rocks of any mountain in the western country. In several parts of it, for miles, it is inaccessible even to the Indians on foot. In one place particularly, near the summit of the mountain, there is a most remarkable ledge of rocks, of about thirty miles in length and two hundred feet in thickness, showing a perpendicular face to the southeast more noble and grand than any artificial fortification in the known world, and apparently

equal in point of regularity. Through this stupendous pile, according to some modern authors, the waters of all the upper branches of the Tennessee forced their way. The attempt would have been impracticable at any other place than the one mentioned, for more than one hundred miles eastwardly. Here, then, seems to have been the chasm left by the Creator to convey off those waters, which must otherwise have overflowed, and rendered useless a vast tract of valuable country enclosed within the mountain.

The enchanted mountain, about two miles south of Brasstown, is principally remarkable for the curiosities on its rocks. There are on several of the rocks a number of impressions, resembling the tracks of turkies, bears, horses, and human beings, as visible and perfect as they could be made in snow or sand. The latter tracks are remarkable for having uniformly six toes each, only one excepted, which appears to be the print of a negro's foot. By this it may be supposed that the originals were the progeny of Titan or Anak. One of these tracks is very large, the length of the foot being sixteen inches, the proximate breadth behind the toes seven inches, and the diameter of the heel-ball five. One of the horse tracks is likewise of an uncommon size, the transverse and conjugate diameters being eight by ten inches; perhaps the horse which some mighty warrior rode. What appears the most in favour of these being the real tracks of the animals they represent, is the circumstance of a track which appears to have been made by the slipping of a horse's foot several inches, and the same kind of tracks

never sported more seriously; if the operation of chance, never was there more apparent design. If it were done by art, it might be to perpetuate the remembrance of some remarkable event of war, or engagement fought on the ground. The vast heaps of stones near the place, said to be the tombs of warriors slain in battle, seem to favour the supposition. The texture of the rock is soft and can be easily cut with a knife, and appears to be of the nature of the pipe-stone. Some of the tribes of Indians entertain an opinion that it rains whenever any one visits the place, as if sympathetic nature wept at the recollection of the dreadful catastrophe which those figures were intended to represent.

I met with no occurrence which is worth relating, my journey being mostly through a wilderness which had not yet been subject to the culturing hand of man, and on the evening of the fifth day I arrived at Knoxville.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Knoxville—Medicinal spring—Quality of the land—Rogersville—Greenville—Jonesborough—Abingdon—Taarsville—Georgetown.*

KNOXVILLE is built in one of the most beautiful situations that the state of Tennessee affords. It enjoys a communication with every part of the state, and is one

its junction with the Tennessee, and four miles below the mouth of French Broad, or Frank river. The town is regularly laid out, and contains about two hundred houses and one thousand inhabitants. Here is a court-house, gaol, and barracks large enough to contain one thousand men. A very elegant church has lately been built, and there are a number of handsome houses now building, some of which are three stories high. Here are five stores for European and West-India goods. There are a number of branches of mechanical business caried on by the inhabitants, and the mechanics receive a liberal price for their labour.

The district courts of the United States are held semi-annually here and at Nashville. A college has been erected here, which is handsomely endowed, and will in time become a valuable institution; it is called Blount college.

The river Holston is three hundred yards wide opposite to Knoxville, and affords a fine navigation for the conveyance of produce from the town.

On Frank river, not far distant from this town, a large, clear, medicinal spring has lately been discovered, which, on experiments being made, has been found to relieve various complaints of the human body; its temperature rather exceeds blood heat. The water of this spring contains iron, a mineral alkali, common salt, and lime. From the *fixed air* it contains it sometimes has in a small degree the effect of spiritous liquors. Physi-

flammation. It gives relief in difficulty of digestion, want of appetite, hypochondria, and all those complaints in either sex for which chalybeates are proper. The stone, gravel, and phthisic, have been relieved by a free use of this water.

The land in the neighbourhood of Knoxville is in many places rich and fertile, and many parts of it are thickly studded with poplar, hickory, black walnut, buck-eye, or the horse chesnut, sycamore, locust, and sugar maple trees. The undergrowth in many places is cane, fifteen or twenty feet high, and so close as to exclude all other plants: where the cane does not abound, we find red bud, wild plum, spicewood, red and white mulberry, ginseng, Virginia and Seneca snakeroot, angelica, sweet anise, ginger, and wild hops.

The woods abound with a plenty of game, such as pheasants, partridges, or quails, and turkies in abundance through the year. During the winter season the waters of the French Broad afford plenty of swans, wild geese, brant, and ducks. Catfish have been caught in that river that weighed upwards of one hundred pounds, and perch that weighed more than twenty pounds.

After remaining a few days, I set out from Knoxville for Rogersville, which is distant sixty-four miles. The morning was cloudy, and the thermometer stood at 60°. In the evening I put up at Bean Station, which is twenty-seven miles distant from Rogersville. The inn had tolerably good accommodations, and my landlord was civil,

thought so from his asking a number of questions. He immediately withdrew, and after eating a hearty supper I retired to bed.

The next morning being clear, I set forward, and proceeded through an agreeable country, fertile and well watered. About ten miles distant from Bean Station, I found a man who was travelling my road, and who appeared to possess some considerable information. I asked him how long he had been in the country. He replied that he had been here about two years; that he emigrated from the state of Pennsylvania, and purchased one hundred acres of land on Clinch river, and that he had since purchased about two hundred acres more. He said that the lands were rich, and would produce about 70 or 80 bushels of Indian corn to the acre. He recommended the country very highly, and assured me that he had never been more healthy in his life. "Formerly," said he, "I was troubled with a severe pain in the breast, and difficulty of breathing, but now I am perfectly healthy, and free from any pain."

About 4 o'clock in the afternoon, I entered Rogersville, a pleasant and thriving little town, the capital of Hawkins county. It contains about thirty houses, and about ninety inhabitants. It has a court-house, in which the business of the county of Hawkins is transacted. The tavern is well kept and furnishes good accommodations.

In the morning, about six o'clock, I went on for Greenville, which is situated about twenty-six miles from

raising of them, and will soon be able to make excellent cider. Whiskey is made in large quantities; but as it is, to use the expression of Dr. Belknap, "the bane of society," it is hoped it will give place to less ardent and more nourishing liquors.

As I travelled leisurely, I did not arrive in Greenville until three o'clock. It is a small place, of about forty houses, and one hundred and fifty inhabitants. It is situated on the west side of the northeast branch of the Nolachuckee river, six miles distant from Greenville college. It is a post town, and promises to be a thriving little place.

The road from thence to Jonesborough is level, and very good. The weather was clear and remarkably mild for the season, and I could travel all day without any inconvenience.

In the evening I arrived at Jonesborough, the chief town of Washington district; it is well laid out, and contains many houses which are handsomely built. Here is a court-house, in which the district and county court business is done. It is a healthy place, and the inhabitants manufacture most of their own clothing.

In the morning I started forward with the intention of proceeding to Abingdon in Virginia, which is sixty-four miles from Jonesborough. The day was fine, and at night I put up at a neat public house, where I was furnished with a good supper and bed; this, it may be observed, is generally the case in these parts. They have af-

some excellent ham, and a plenty of good bread and potatoes, raised on their own farms.

In the morning I found a gentleman who was going towards Abingdon, and we agreed to proceed in company. He was a Virginian, and had been into the state of Tennessee to purchase land. He told me that he had bought one hundred and twenty acres of excellent land at forty dollars per acre, and that he judged it to be as good as any land in the state of Virginia. What a trifle to render a man independent, while in Europe the same sum will scarcely maintain a family and pay the enormous taxes for one year!

We pushed on with considerable speed, and late in the evening arrived at Abingdon, having come forty miles. I immediately put up at a genteel boarding-house and soon retired to rest, and did not rise in the morning till the bell summoned me to the breakfast table.

Abingdon is the chief town of Washington county, Virginia, containing about two hundred houses. It is well laid out, and is a healthy and agreeable little place. Here is a court-house and meeting-house, and eight stores for European goods.

I remained in Abingdon two days, as my horse had become lame. He had been rode very hard for a few days past, but being in every respect a sound and good bodied horse, he recovered in a few days, and was fit to proceed.

The morning was pleasant, and the travelling very

much hospitality. He told me he had about sixty acres of excellent land under cultivation, and nearly ninety more which he intended clearing as soon as possible. He had four promising children, whose round faces and rosy cheeks proclaimed them in a land of plenty.

In the evening I put up with a planter who had recently removed to this country; he appeared contented with his situation, and spake with confidence of making great improvements on his land in the course of a few years.

I proceeded along a road which was low and marshy; about twelve o'clock the road became better. I stopped to dine with a gentleman of the name of Harcourt, whose house is situated at a small distance from the road. In the evening I put up at a farm house, where I had good substantial fare and a good bed.

I started about six o'clock in the morning, and proceeded forward with considerable expedition. I passed several thriving orchards of peach trees, which here come to maturity in about three years; there is an insect, however, which destroys the trees in a few years after they begin to bear.

About two o'clock I arrived at Taarsville. The town is pleasantly situated, and contains about forty houses; it has a post-office, and is a place of considerable business. Here is a tavern which furnishes good accommodations, and two stores for European goods.

The land about Taarsville is good, and that of the first quality is selling at from forty to forty-five dollars per acre; the comm[illegible]

settlements which is selling at sixty and seventy dollars per acre.

From Taarsville I started for Georgetown, which is eighty-nine miles distant. The road was good, being of a light soil, which appears to lay upon a strata of limestone five or six feet below the surface. The water is all impregnated with lime, but is soft, and when used for a short time perfectly agreeable. In the evening I put up at the house of a gentleman who entertained me with much hospitality.

The country here is agreeably interspersed with farm-houses, at the distance of two or three miles apart, so that a traveller is but a short time out of sight of one house before he has a view of another. This day travelling was rendered unpleasant by the heat, the thermometer standing at 84° in the shade. I put up at an early hour, having come thirty miles.

The next morning was cloudy, and the air very close. I rode about ten miles, and stopped at the house of widow woman to breakfast. Her husband had been dead about eight months, and she informed me that she expected shortly to be married. I smiled when she mentioned it, and told her I thought she was rather in haste. "I think not," said she, "for I have been courted four months, and I am sure that is long enough for any woman to make up her mind." At this reply I could not help laughing, which not a little chagrined the good woman. I observed as an apology, that it was customary, in the eastern states, to wait at least one year before another courtship commences. "Why so it is," said the woman, "but then

body cannot do for themselves, that I can't see how any body can be contented without one; for my part, I have not had a sound night's sleep since my poor husband died, for I abominably hate to sleep alone." This produced another hearty laugh, in which I was joined by my kind hostess; she appeared to be about thirty years of age, and possessed a large portion of that loquacity which is a general characteristic of the female sex.

About dark I put up at a neat comfortable house, where I was well entertained. After writing a short time I retired to bed, and slept soundly till the matin hymn of the feathered songsters roused me from my bed to pursue my journey.

I rode ten miles in the morning, and took breakfast with an elderly gentleman to whom I had a letter from his son in Tennessee. The old gentleman's family consisted of his wife, and two daughters, who were about sixteen, and very pretty. Contentment and happiness seemed to preside in the family, and rendered it a picture of domestic felicity.

It was near four o'clock when I reached Georgetown, the weather being so very warm as to render the travelling unpleasant during the middle of the day. I proceeded to the inn, which is well furnished and has good accommodations.

Georgetown is small and not very regularly built; it contains about seventy houses and five hundred inhabitants. It is a place of some business, and promises in time to become a place of considerable trade.

black walnut, hickory, buck-eye, &c. Good land can be purchased in the neighbourhood at twenty and thirty dollars per acre. My next route was for Lexington, which was formerly considered as the capital of the state of Kentucky.

---

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Departure from Georgetown—Lexington—Description of it—Mammoth bones—Causes why superficial observers have supposed the mammoth and elephant to be of the same species—Tradition of the Shawanese Indians—Frankfort—Description of it.*

In the morning I settled my bill, and proceeded in company with a gentleman who was going to Lexington for his right to some land which he had purchased a short time since. We travelled eight miles, and stopped to breakfast, at a neat house, where we had a good breakfast of veal cutlets. I was informed that they generally killed their veal when about four weeks old, and the average weight was from one hundred to one hundred and twenty pounds each.

The country through which we now travelled is very

The next morning we rode forward ten miles to breakfast. The road is for the most part good; the soil of a reddish clay, intermixed with small stones.

About dark we arrived at Lexington, and I put up at the principal inn, kept by Mr. Passelweight, who was very civil and obliging, and the accommodations good.

Lexington is the largest town in Kentucky; it is situated on a rich and extensive plain, in Fayette county, in lat. 38° 6′ north, and 84° 26′ west lon. It is regularly laid out, and well built, containing about eight hundred houses, and four thousand two hundred inhabitants. It has a court-house and gaol, besides three places of public worship. There are two weekly papers printed in this town. Lexington is twenty-four miles north of Frankfort, and is in every respect a flourishing and well situated town.

The land in the vicinity of Lexington is rich, and the improvements which are making have caused it of late to bear a high price. Some lots of second quality land have been sold at fifty dollars the acre, and from the progress of improvements it is reasonable to suppose it will be much higher, as it has risen in two years fifty per cent. The inhabitants export large quantities of live stock, which find a ready market at New-Orleans.

At Lexington there is a mill carried by steam, which supplies the whole town with flour; it is an ingenious and well-constructed piece of mechanism, and is of much importance to the place.

In caves near Lexington are found skeletons of the human body, which are arranged in the following order: First on the ground [illegible] On these broad

stones, and covered with other stones, which serve as a basis for the next arrangement of bodies. In this order they were built without mortar, to the height of a man, every laying of the pile being narrower than the one under it. This method of burying is certainly totally different from that now practised by the Indians.

At several places near Lexington, and in the neighbourhood of salt springs in this state, are found bones whose enormous size has attracted the attention of naturalists, and which have been ascertained beyond a doubt to belong to a kind of animals long since extinct. Specimens of these bones have been sent both to France and England, where they have been examined with the greatest care, and found upon comparison to be the remains of the same species of animals that produced those other fossil bones which have been discovered in Tartary, Chili, and several other places, both of the old and new continent. What animal this is, and why its ruins are found in regions so widely separated, in neither of which it now exists, is a question of most difficult solution. The ignorant and superstitious Tartars attribute these bones to a creature whom they call maimon, which, they say, usually resides at the bottom of the rivers, and of whom they relate many marvellous stories; but as this is an assertion totally divested of proof, and even of probability, it has justly been rejected by the learned; and, on the other hand, it is certain that no such amphibious quadrupeds exist in the American waters. The bones bear a great resemblance to those of the elephant. There is no other

have generally led superficial observers to conclude that they could belong to no other than that quadruped; and when they first drew the attention of the world, philosophers seem to have subscribed to the same opinion. But if this opinion be correct, whence is it that the whole species has disappeared in America? An animal so laborious and so docile as the elephant, the industry of the Peruvians (which reduced to servitude and subjected to education species so much inferior in these qualities as the lama and the paca) could never have overlooked, if it had been to be found in their country. Whence is it that these bones are found in climates where the elephant, which is a native of the torrid zone, cannot even subsist in his wild state, and in a state of servitude will not propagate? These are difficulties sufficient to stagger credulity itself, and at last produced the inquiries of the celebrated anatomist, Dr. Hunter, whose indefatigable diligence soon discovered the mistake which had misled the naturalists of Europe.

He procured specimens of these bones from different parts of the western country, and examined them with that accuracy for which he is distingushed. He has discovered a considerable difference between the shape and structure of these bones and those of the elephant. He observed from the form of the teeth that they must have belonged to a carnivorous animal; whereas the habits of the elephant are foreign to such sustenance, and his jaws totally unprovided with the teeth necessary for its use; and from the whole he concluded, to the satisfaction of

race is probably extinct, unless it may be found in the extensive continent of New-Holland, whose recesses have not yet been pervaded by the curiosity or avidity of civilized man.

Mr. Jefferson says "that the grinders of the mammoth are five or six times as large as those of the elephant." Col. Morgan denies this, and observes, "I have seen the grinders of an elephant as large and as heavy as the largest of the mammoth; they are indeed thinner, deeper rooted, and differently shaped, denoting a granivorous animal, whereas the grinders of the mammoth resemble those of a wolf or dog, and show them to have been carnivorous."

The following tradition, which is existing among the Shawanese Indians, is given in their own words, to show that the impression made on their minds by it must have been forcible.

"Ten thousand moons ago, when nought but gloomy forests covered this land of the sleeping sun; long before the pale men, with thunder and fire at their command, rushed on the wings of the wind to ruin this garden of nature; when nought but the untamed wanderers of the woods, and men as unrestrained as they, were the lords of the soil, a race of animals were in being huge as the frowning precipice, cruel as the bloody panther, swift as the descending eagle, and terrible as the angel of night. The pines crashed beneath their feet, and the lakes shrunk when they slaked their thirst. The forceful javelin in vain was hurled, and the barbed arrow fell harmless from

The cry of universal distress extended even to the region of peace in the west, and the Good Spirit interposed to save the unhappy. The forked lightning gleamed all around, and loudest thunder rocked the globe. The bolts of heaven were hurled upon the cruel destroyers alone, and the mountains echoed with the bellowings of death. All were killed except one male, the fiercest of the race, and him even the red artillery of heaven assailed in vain. He ascended the bluest summit which shades the source of the Monongahela, and roaring aloud, bid defiance to every vengeance. The red lightning scorched the lofty firs, and rived the mighty oaks, but only glanced upon the enraged monster. At length, maddening with rage, he leaped over the waves of the west, and at this moment reigns the uncontrolled monarch of the wilderness, in despite even of omnipotence itself."

I staid in Lexington a few days, and proceeded on to Frankfort, the capital of Kentucky. This town is in Franklin county, and pleasantly situated on the northeast side of Kentucky river, fifty miles from its confluence with the Ohio. This river rises with three heads from a mountainous part of the country; it is amazingly crooked, upwards of two hundred miles in length, and about one hundred and fifty yards broad opposite the town.

The state house is a handsome stone building, and has apartments in which most of the public offices are kept. Here is a tobacco warehouse; the town is improving very fast, and its situation is agreeable and healthy; it is in latitude 38° 14′ north.

The townsh[illegible] hou-

The river is navigable for large craft many miles above the town, and the deep creeks into the interior parts for boats of considerable size.

As I intend to leave the state of Kentucky, and the western country, I shall here introduce a few observations which may be of service to those who may wish to remove to this country from England, or any other parts of Europe.

The numbers which have emigrated to this country from Europe, have awakened the jealousy and the fears of the British government, and they have, by magnifying trifling circumstances, attempted to put a stop to a practice, which, though its effects are slow, are not the less sure in weakening the strength and resources of the European countries. Slight skirmishes with the Indians have been termed bloody battles; the fevers which have raged in Philadelphia and New-York have been held forth as a proof of an unhealthy climate throughout the United States. These, however, need no refutation. The rapid increase of population in the United States fully proves that these assertions are totally unfounded. I shall attempt to point out some of the advantages which an emigrant will have in going to the western country, and draw some comparison between this country and many parts of Europe very much to the advantage of the former.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

*General information to settlers, either from Europe or the United States, pointing out the advantages arising from settling in the western country.*

THE United States of America are under a free representative government, and every citizen has a voice in electing such men as will make laws for the good of the community, and preserve inviolate their constitution.

There are in the country but very few persons, exclusive of some who reside in New-York, Philadelphia, and a few other cities, who would in Europe be considered rich; but it is highly gratifying to the feelings of an American to know, that there are very few who can with propriety be considered poor. There is rather a happy mediocrity that prevails throughout the country. You no where see in the United States, that disgusting and melancholy contrast so common in Europe, of vice and wretchedness, and filth and rags, in the immediate neighbourhood of the most wanton extravagance and the most useless and luxurious parade.

Nor are the poor so depressed as they are in Great-Britain. They have no military to keep them in awe, nor hired spies and informers to pierce the inmost recesses of society, and call forth one part of a family against another, thus destroy domestic happiness: but all is

is considered as a mark of prudence to remain single; it is openly commended, and as rigidly practiced as the voice of nature will allow. The married man, whose passions have been stronger, whose morals have been less callous, or whose interest has furnished motives to matrimony, doubts whether each child he has be not a misfortune, and looks upon his offspring with a melancholy kind of affection that imbitters some of the most pleasurable moments of his life.

In America, particularly in the western country, no man feels anxious about the support of a family. There, every one feels the increase of his family to be the increase of his happiness, and no farmer doubts about the facility of providing for his children as comfortably as he has lived, where land is so cheap and so fertile, where society is so much upon an equality, and where the prodigious increase of population, from natural and accidental causes, and the improving state of the country, furnishes a market for whatever superfluous produce he chooses to raise, without incessantly presenting that temptation to artificial expense and extravagant competition, so common and so numerous in European countries.

This part of the country has not, indeed, many charms for the dissipated and voluptuous part of mankind; but it has very many for the rational, sober-minded, and discreet. It is a part of the United States which affords great opportunities of comfort and prosperity to people of

the preference to any state in the union. Nature has given to the regions of this fair country a fertility so astonishing, that to believe it, occular demonstration becomes necessary. To this advantage, I may add that of the number of European settlers who have emigrated, and continue to emigrate thither, and the consequent rapid state of improvement that has followed. Lands in and near the towns in this state, must continue to increase in their value, and many purchases may now be made in different parts of the country with very great advantage to settlers. Some difficulties will undoubtedly be experienced, and such as must naturally be expected in an unsettled country.

Farmers, for the most part, do their own work in this state, cultivating their farms and living upon the produce. A few slaves may be had, but, for the honour of humanity, it is to be hoped that this abominable method of cultivating our fields will be avoided. The whole commerce between master and slave is a perpetual exercise of the most boisterous passions; the most unremitting despotism on the one part, and degrading submission on the other. The children see this, and learn to imitate it, for man is an imitative animal. This quality is the germ of all education in him; from his cradle to his grave he is learning to do what he sees others do. If a parent could find no motive, either in his philanthrophy or his self-love, for restraining the intemperance of passion towards his slave, it should always be a sufficient one that his child is present; but generally it is not sufficient. While the parent stormsˆ the child looks on, [illegible] hes the [illegible]

passions; and thus educated, and daily practised in tyranny, he cannot but be stamped with its odious peculiarities. The man must be a prodigy who can retain his manners and morals undepraved under such circumstances. Exclusive of this, it begets a habit of indolence. This is so true, that of the proprietors of slaves, a very small proportion indeed are ever seen to labour. And can the liberties of a nation be thought secure when they have removed their only firm basis, a conviction in the minds of the people that these liberties are the gift of God, that they are not to be violated but with his wrath.

Religion, in this state, is established on a basis as free as the air we breathe. It allows all its citizens to worship God according to the dictates of their own consciences, so long as they conduct themselves with order and decency.

---

## CHAP. XXXIV.

*Leave Frankfort for White Court-house—Huntsville—Choctaw nation—St. Stephens—Mobile—Pensacola—Observations on the soil of West-Florida and the culture of cotton.*

On the 20th of October I left Frankfort, intending to take a route by the way of White Court-house, Hunts-

the purpose of procuring furs, of which I understood the Choctaws collected great numbers.

The morning was very fine, and I proceeded on without meeting with any thing remarkable during this day's journey, not having yet left the neighbourhood of Frankfort, of which I have already given some description.

The distance from Frankfort to White Court-house is one hundred and sixty miles; the road for the most part is good, and for the first sixty miles agreeably interspersed with farm houses; for about fifty miles more the houses are thinly scattered, and improvements have not as yet begun to take place, although the land is rich, and sold very cheap. I met with no occurrence worth relating, and arrived at White Court-house about twelve o'clock on the sixth day after my departure from Frankfort.

White Court-house has nothing to recommend it to the attention of travellers. It is a small place, and but thinly inhabited, and is situated in Warren county. Almost all the business of the county is transacted in this place. The land is good, and there is no doubt but that in a few years it will become a thriving settlement.

I proceeded forward in the morning for Fayetteville, and after riding about ten miles, stopped and took breakfast with a farmer. After breakfast I pursued my journey. The weather was very warm, and the travelling unpleasant in the middle of the day. I stopped to dine with a gentlemen of the name of Berry, who entertained me with much hospitality. In the evening I lodged with a farmer who [illegible] of excel- [illegible] and

The next morning I rode ten miles to a neat farm house, where I obtained a comfortable breakfast. The day was cloudy, which rendered the travelling more pleasant. About dark I arrived at Huntsville, and put up for the night.

Huntsville is a small but thriving little place, and has a court-house which is handsomely built. They have no meeting-house as yet, but are about collecting funds for the purpose of erecting one. At present they have preaching in a large log house, which is appropriated to that use. The town is situated at a short distance from Elk river, which is navigable within a few miles for boats, and is of considerable service to the town.

In the morning I went forward on my route, and found the weather cool and agreeable. About eight miles from Huntsville I stopped to breakfast, and then proceeded eighteen miles to the house of a farmer, where I put up for the night.

At six o'clock the next morning I went forward, and at about eight I crossed the river not far from Fort Deposit, and proceeded for the Chickasaw nation. My road now lay, for the most part, through an uncultivated wilderness, which, although rich in all the productions of nature, has nevertheless nothing which can render a description of it either necessary or entertaining.

On the fourth day after my crossing the river, I arrived within the territories of the Choctaws, or Flat Heads, which are a powerful, hardy, and subtle nation.

They inhabit a fine and extensive tract of hilly country, with large and fertile plains, intervening between the Ala-

muster about three thousand fighting men; but by continual wars, in which it has been their destiny to be engaged, both with other Indian tribes and with the whites, they have been much reduced, and are becoming weak and pusillanimous.

Their complexion is brighter than that of the neighbouring Indians. They are robust and well made, and taller than any of their neighbours, being generally six feet high. Their women are well made, tall, slender, and delicate.

The Choctaws, different from most of the Indian tribes bordering upon the United States, have lately began to employ much of their time in agricultural pursuits, after the manner of the whites.

The distance from the Choctaws to the Chickasawka has been estimated at two hundred miles, which in my opinion is incorrect, and probably one hundred and sixty would be nearer the true distance. The road is, for the most part, through a wilderness, and in some places it is dangerous travelling on account of the straggling Indians which are scattered through the woods. I carried my provision with me, and generally took breakfast before starting in the morning, when I would cook enough to last me till evening. In seven days after my leaving the Choctaws, I arrived in Chickasawka.

Chickasawka is situated on the head waters of the Tombigbee river, which is the dividing line between the Creeks and the Choctaws. This river derives its name from a fort which is situated on the west side of it, about ninety-six miles above the town of Mobile.

Government [illegible] road

of about seventy miles. Surveyors were appointed for the purpose, but from some causes not generally known, it has never been done.

The land in and about the Chickasawka is rich and fertile, but the inhabitants do not attend much to agriculture. Trading with the Indians for furs, of which they send large quantities to Mobile, forms the principal part of their commerce, and receives their most particular attention.

I remained in this place better than three weeks, during which time I purchased large quantities of furs, with the intention of taking them to St. Stephens, where I expected to dispose of them at an advanced price.

I purchased two horses, which I used as pack-horses, and started for St. Stephens, which is fifty-five miles distant from Chickasawka. I proceeded slowly along without meeting with any remarkable occurrence, and on the evening of the 2d of December, arrived at St. Stephens.

The town of St. Stephens is small, and not very regularly built; it is situated on the Tombigbee river, and contains about ninety houses and three hundred inhabitants. It is a place of considerable trade, and annually furnishes a large number of skins for the European markets. The Choctaw Indians alone, in two years, brought to this market two hundred and twenty-five thousand skins, which were exchanged for European and West-India goods. These skins are shipped by the merchants to those places which furnish the best market. This is a

expected, owing to there being a large quantity on hand, and but few shipments, which determined me to go down the river to Mobile, where there was a probability of my meeting with a more advantageous market. Having but few arrangements to make, in four days after my arrival I was ready to proceed.

I went on board of a boat which was going down the river, and which was the most expeditious mode of travelling. I found on board a number of gentlemen who were going on to New-Orleans and Pensacola. We had an agreeable passage, and nothing was wanting to render it pleasing and delightful. On the third day, about one o'clock, we arrived at Mobile.

I here found a ready market for my furs, at an advance of seventy-five per cent, which, after deducting twenty-five for my expenses from the Choctaws, will leave me fifty per cent on them clear of every charge.

The fur trade from this place has greatly declined within a few years. They formerly shipped peltry and furs to the amount of twenty thousand pounds sterling, but now it does not amount to more than one half of that sum.

The city of *Mobile* is in latitude 30° 12′ north; it is pretty regular, of an oblong figure, and situated on the west bank of the river of the same name. To the north-westward it is in the neighbourhood of marshes, which render the town unhealthy. The inhabitants are afflicted with the intermittent fever, fever and ague, and other complaints common to such places.

There are [illegible] uses, which [illegible] meri-

stands Fort Conde, a regular built fortress, in which there is a very neat and commodious square of barracks, for the accommodation of officers and soldiers. The town at present contains about three hundred houses, many of which are built after the Spanish fashion. The guns in the fort at Mobile Point, 30 miles from the town, were all spiked just before the victory of general Jackson.

One of the principal causes which has probably operated to effect the decline of Mobile, is the obstructions to large vessels coming up to the town, a bar rendering it impossible for them to come nearer than within seven miles. If this obstruction could be removed, I think that the commercial importance of this place would again revive, and we should once more see its streets thronged with merchants. Its situation is well calculated for commerce, excepting the objection already mentioned, and it is my opinion that with thirty or forty thousand dollars this might be removed, and the inhabitants have secured to them all the advantages which they formerly enjoyed.

As I was within eighty miles of Pensacola, the capital of West-Florida, I thought it would be advisable for me to visit the place. I accordingly made preparations for that purpose, and my business being soon arranged, I left Mobile on the 4th of January, 1815. Owing to boisterous weather, I did not arrive in Pensacola before late the next day.

The town of Pensacola is situated on a bay of the gulf of Mexico, which forms a very commodious harbour.

in breadth. It contains about two thousand houses, and seven thousand inhabitants. The houses are many of them elegant and spacious. The chimnies are all built of soft lime-stone, cut in squares, which lasts for centuries. The public buildings are mostly built of stone, and are very large and spacious. The town has much increased of late, and promises soon to become the principal mart of all the produce which is disposed of in West-Florida. The mercantile business is well attended to, and many merchants have made their fortunes in Pensacola in a few years.

The exports of Pensacola consist of skins, logwood, dying stuffs, and silver dollars, together with sugar, cotton, and indigo, which in 1812 amounted to 240,500 dollars.

The soil of West-Florida is various, according to the different improvements which have been made upon it. It is a mixture of sand and black mould, making what is generally termed a grey soil. A considerable part of it, when under cultivation, yields good crops of indigo, cotton, corn, or potatoes. The planting of cotton has of late years been much attended to, several planters having turned their indigo plantations into cotton fields. There are two kinds of cotton which flourish very well here, the annual and the West-Indian. The former is low and planted every year; the phlox long, strong, and perfectly white. The latter is a tall, perennial plant, the stalk somewhat shrubby, several of which rise up from the root for a number of successive years, the stems of the former year being killed by the frosts. The balls of the West-India other, but and

## CHAP. XXXV.

*Author goes from Pensacola to the Alabama—Fort Claiborne—Fort Montgomery—Fort Mins—St. Stephens—Author starts for the northern part of the United States—Flint river—Description of it.*

From Pensacola, I proceeded by land through a pine, barren country, to the Alabama. The distance is about seventy-five miles, and there are no plantations on the road, although the culture of cotton might be advantageously carried on. In many parts the pine grows to a considerable height. It is not our common pine, but like that which is called the long-leafed pine. The shape of the leaf is nearly like that of other pines, but is a yard in length, hanging in large clusters.

On the 10th of January I arrived on the banks of the Alabama river at Fort Claiborne. The Alabama is formed by the junction of the Coosa and Tallapoosa rivers, at Little Talassee, and runs in a southwesterly direction until it meets the Tombigbee. This beautiful river has a gentle current and pure water, and abounds in excellent fish. It is eighty yards wide opposite the fort, which is situated on a high bluff, called the Choctaw bluff, which is about two hundred and fifty feet high, while the bank on the opposite side of the river is not elevated more than two feet above the surface of the water. This river frequently overflows, and the country for some distance is occasionally covered with water, which

have, in the month of May, in nine days descended this river from Little Talassee to Mobile bay, the distance of about three hundred and fifty miles.

The land on this river furnishes a variety of soil, being in some places very rich, and in others just above mediocrity. The regular overflowing of the river might be made of much benefit in the cultivation of rice, for which this country is well calculated. Many valuable plantations might here be taken up, which, with suitable care and attention, would soon render the owners independent.

From Fort Claiborne I went to Fort Montgomery, which is distant about forty-five miles. This fort was built after the massacre at Fort Mins, which was perpetrated by the Musaogulge confederacy, where it is said two hundred and fifty men, women, and children, lost their lives. The ruins of Fort Mins are about two miles distant, it having been burnt to the ground. The site of Fort Montgomery is superior in point of situation, it having a more commanding view, and not being liable to be surrounded. The bones of the unfortunate sufferers at Fort Mins are still in a great measure unburied, and exposed to public view; those which have been buried appear to have been dug up again by wild beasts, or some others.

At sunrise I went forward, crossed the Alabama, and proceeded by the way of the Cut-off to St. Stephens, which is forty-five miles distant from Fort Montgomery. The travelling was very good, and the weather agreeable for the time of the year, it being what may be termed the rainy season, as so[illegible] without there

On my arrival at St. Stephens I made preparations for returning to the northern parts of the United States, and for that purpose I sold my horse, which had become poor and not very fit for the journey, and purchased another, which was an excellent sound bodied horse, for which I had to pay one hundred and sixty dollars. Good horses are scarce in St. Stephens, and generally high; the reason is that very few horses will live there, owing to a disease which is called the *fatehu*, of which great numbers die every year.

On the morning of the 8th of February, 1815, I crossed the Tombigbee, and rode through a level, and for the most part a fertile country. The soil was of a rich black loam, and would yield an abundant crop of tobacco or indigo, if put in proper cultivation.

Twenty-five miles from St. Stephens I crossed the Alabama, which is here about eighty yards broad, and encamped for the night in a fertile and well watered plain. The evening was remarkably fine, and although at a season of the year when Flora presents but few of her gifts to our view, yet the landscape was agreeably interspersed with evergreens, which rendered the scenery fine beyond description.

The next morning I proceeded on my journey, and about nine o'clock entered the wilderness, and proceeded through thick woods of hickory, walnut, buck-eye, and some pines. The road was in many places much choked with underwood, which rendered the travelling very diff

purchased in St. Stephens. I had fire-works with me, and my usual method of proceeding was to ride a few miles in the morning, and then to cook my breakfast, at the same time laying in a sufficiency for dinner; this would last me till I encamped for the night, when I again made a meal. I had with me tea and coffee, and a small kettle, and whenever my journey had been unusually fatiguing, I generally made either tea or coffee, and this, with a little brandy, never failed to restore me by the next morning.

In the morning I proceeded on my route, and about eight o'clock crossed Limestone creek. The country through which I rode was uniformly dull, being an entire forest, without any thing to divert the attention. At dark I encamped by the side of a small rivulet, which afforded good water.

The evening was wild and gloomy, the clouds were thick, black, and heavy, and the thunder was heard in distant murmurs and echoed among the hills. The weather was very cold, and my blanket was scarcely sufficient to protect me from the inclemency of the weather. The wolves had now become very troublesome, and I was obliged to keep a large fire to protect me from their fury.

At daylight I proceeded on, the weather being cloudy and cold. I passed a place where a fire had lately been extinguished, which I judged to have been kindled by some Indian hunters. I looked for them all day, but without meeting any. I encamped at dark in a place which had much the appearance of a fort. The night was very con-

siderable quantities and rendered my lodging truly uncomfortabe.

The next day it continued to rain with as much fury as the preceding night, but nevertheless I proceeded forward, and about four o'clock entered a still thicker part of the forest, which was almost entirely composed of pines nearly ninety feet in height. The gloom of the surrounding forest, the stormy aspect of the weather, and the distant howling of wild beasts, contributed not a little to render my reflections melancholy and unpleasant. At an early hour I encamped in a thick cluster of trees, but had to keep a fire continually burning at a short distance, on the outside of the cluster.

Early the next morning I started forward, the weather having become more pleasant, although not entirely clear. About noon I crossed the Chatabachi river, which was here about twenty yards broad; the country now became more clear, and the travelling more pleasant. In the afternoon I passed an Indian camp of about a dozen wigwams, and understood the party had been catching fish, of which they had a considerable quantity. I encamped in the evening, after having come thirty-five miles.

The next morning I proceeded forward through a fine country, which had the most agreeable and pleasant appearance. About noon I crossed Flint river, which is here about thirty yards wide. It is a considerable river, and takes its rise in Georgia, in the country of the Creek

The country lying on this river has every appearance of being as delightful and fruitful a region as any in the United States. It is well calculated for every branch of agriculture, and offers an uninterrupted navigation to the bay of Mexico and the Atlantic ocean, and thence to the West-India islands and all parts of the world.

---

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Author proceeds on his journey—Fort Hawkins—Remains of the ingenuity of the Indians—Milledgeville—Augusta—Manner in which a Georgia planter spends his time.*

At night I put up at colonel Hawkins's, where I was well received. This gentleman had a fine plantation, and his family consisted of himself, his wife, and two children.

In the morning I went forward, and at eight o'clock passed Fort Hawkins, which was garrisoned by about three hundred soldiers, and under the command of the gentleman who so kindly entertained me the preceding night. The country is here more open, and the soil good and fertile.

At noon I crossed the Oakmulgee, which is a branch of the [illegible] beautiful [illegible] at the place where I

wide. The country on the east side of the river is very rich and fertile, and is called the Oakmulgee fields just above the confluence of the Oconee with this river.

On this river there are many remains of the ingenuity and grandeur of the aboriginal inhabitants, which equal any thing that has yet been seen of their work. The ruins of a capital town are still to be seen, which was laid out on a regular and elegant plan; it was of an exact square, the streets running so as to intersect each other at right angles, and forming three large squares. The buildings were of a better construction than those now erected by the Indians, and appear to have been very convenient. Around three of the public squares are the remains of terraces, which appear to have been lightly, and even elegantly constructed. In the neighbourhood of the town are several artificial hills, which have been raised, some to the height of sixty feet, and appear to have been thrown up with considerable labour.

In the evening I stopped at the house of a gentleman who entertained me with much hospitality. The country through which I rode this day was more open and fertile than any I had before seen, and although not very thickly settled, furnishes a number of good sites for plantations.

At five o'clock the next morning I posted on for Milledgeville, which was forty-five miles distant. Plantations were scattered more thickly along the road, and many of the houses were very neat and convenient. The day was very warm and pleasant for the season, and the travelling very good. At sunset I crossed Fishing creek,

Georgia, and is a well built and flourishing town, containing about five hundred houses and two thousand inhabitants; many of the houses are well built, large, and spacious. There is an elegant state-house erected, in which are most of the offices for transacting public business. A court-house has likewise been erected in the town, in which the district and county court business is transacted.

The penal code for the punishment of criminals has formerly been very severe in Georgia; branding, whipping, and even death being the consequence of committing larcenies, and other crimes of that nature. But much to the honour of the state legislature, they have lately abrogated that law, and made provision for the erection of a state prison. The prison is now erecting in this town; it is of brick, and has the appearance of being an elegant and commodious building.

In the morning I had a specimen of that republican equality which may with propriety be considered as the national characteristic of the United States. A man whose property and possessions were very extensive, had in a variety of ways injured a black man, who was free, and had never done him any injury. The man complained to the legal authority, who immediately summoned the gentleman into their presence; and proof being adduced sufficient to substantiate the charge, he was severely reprimanded, fined, and dismissed. I afterwards understood that he was notorious for his oppression of the blacks, and was justly held in contempt by all those who h[illegible] [illegible]ions to humanity or

Alconey ferry, which is here three hundred yards wide. I put up at the house of Mr. Hopewell, who was very obliging. He informed me that land in and about that place had risen very much since the legislature established Milledgeville as the seat of government, and there was a probability of its increasing in value.

In the morning my kind host would not allow me to depart till after breakfast, which detained me till after 7 o'clock. About 12 o'clock I passed some iron works which were not very large, but flourishing. At 3 o'clock I crossed the creek called Rocky creek, which is here about three yards wide, and abounds with fish. At dark I put up at the house of Mr. O'Neal, a gentleman who had emigrated from Ireland. He owned an extensive plantation, and seemed to be very contented.

The climate in this part of the state is pure and healthy, and the inhabitants have a more wholesome and agreeable countenance than those who reside in the lower parts of the state, or near the seaboard. The soil is a rich black loam, and raises good crops of wheat or tobacco, although the former article is not much attended to, cotton being considered of more importance, and the staple commodity of the state.

After breakfast I continued my journey. The day was cloudy, and the weather unpleasant; the thermometer stood at 41°. I passed many fine plantations, which were distant from one to two miles on the road.

become independent of those large supplies which we receive from the West-Indies, and the price of this necessary article would be reduced more than fifty per cent. I put up at the house of a Mr. Reynolds, where I had good accommodations.

In the morning I went forward with an intention of reaching Augusta in the course of the day, which I found distant thirty-six miles. The weather was very cold, and one of my horse's shoes becoming loose, I stopped at a blacksmith's to get it put on. He was the only one of that profession within many miles, and informed me he had an extensive run of business. He had within five years purchased an hundred acres of land, which he had been enabled to pay for solely from the profits arising from his work. At four o'clock I reached Augusta, and put up at the Globe tavern, where I found good accommodations.

Augusta was formerly the seat of government for the state of Georgia, and is a flourishing town. It is situated on the southwest bank of the Savannah river, which is here about five hundred yards wide, and has a population of three thousand souls. The town is on a large plain, which is fertile and good land, and at the foot of the first falls in the river, where, in a dry season, the water falls four or five feet. It is one hundred and thirty miles distant from Savannah, and one hundred and forty-five from the sea.

The next morning I left Augusta, and crossed the bridge which had lately been erected. I proceeded to Mr. Bartlet's [illegible]

ter's brigade, and related many interesting anecdotes of that officer.

The soil was here dry and sandy, and in my opinion not generally so good as that which I had passsed forty or fifty miles back, although there are many spots as fertile as any in the state.

The day was very cold, and the thermometer stood at 35° at sunset. I put up at Mr. Lee's, where I found a number of persons who were going to different parts of the state. We had good accommodations, and spent the evening very agreeably.

The Georgians are polite, hospitable, and in all their dealings fair and honourable; they are, however, much given to dissipation, particularly the wealthy part of the population, who attend to no business, and live a life of indolence and voluptuousness. The following description of the manner in which they spend their time, has already been published, but is thought worthy of insertion here.

"About six in the morning he quits his bed, and orders his horse to be got ready; he then swallows a dram of bitters, to prevent the ill effects of the early fog, and sets out for a tour upon his plantation. If he sees any of his slaves idle, he inquires the cause; if sickness be alleged, he shuts them up in the sick-house, where they are bled, blistered, or drenched, till they are dead, or so weak as to be scarcely able to stand. If no reason

by a whole troop of young negroes in a primitive state of nakedness.

"After eating his breakfast he again mounts a fresh horse, rides to the first public house, plays at cards, makes bargains, appoints days for horse races or boxing matches, and about the hour of four returns to dinner, bringing with him a number of his friends. If the company be agreeable he seldom rises from table before sunset. If the weather is fair, after an early supper they set out (preceded by a negro who carries a few bottles of brandy and a large fire) for the purpose of shooting deer. The animals, being attracted by the blaze of light, stand still with their eyes fixed upon it until they are shot.

"About midnight they return, according to luck, with or without game; their shins and faces sadly scratched, and themselves fit for nothing but to be put to bed. This is the general routine of existence among such of the Georgians as live in the more retired and woody parts of the state. Trade is principally managed by the overseers and factors.

---

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Ride to Columbia—Camden—Very bad weather—Pedee river—Fayetteville—Description of it.*

[illegible] the morning I [illegible] by a gentleman [illegible]

the way. We passed through a level country, which was well watered, and a number of plantations were scattered over it about half a mile from the road. In the evening we put up at Mr. King's, where we were well entertained.

We rose early in the morning and proceeded through a level plain, and about eight o'clock we crossed the Congaree river. This is a considerable river of South-Carolina, and is formed by the junction of Broad and Saluda rivers. It is about three hundred yards wide at Columbia, where we crossed it, which town is situated on the east side of the river.

The town of Columbia is situated in Kershaw county, Camden district, and is the seat of government for South-Carolina. It contains about five hundred houses and three thousand inhabitants; the streets are regular and well laid out, and many of the houses are elegant. The public offices are kept here, though in some manner divided for the accommodation of the inhabitants, and a branch is still retained in Charleston. Columbia has a court-house and jail, and is inhabited by wealthy and respectable people.

Bacchus, the mirth-inspiring friend, is much respected in this place; and no objection can be made to the sway of so cheering an auxiliary, when limited by prudence and moderation. But as this seldom happens, the objections against these customs have become serious and weighty. It is a species of luxury the most dangerous, because leading directly to all others; but it is a species

tion barren. It is known to all physicians that wine, by its tonic quality, obviates debility produced by climate; and that the effects of putrid miasmatia are destroyed by its antiseptic qualities. Hence it is, in all probability, that the inhabitants of this state are more generally addicted to the indulgencies of the bottle than those of the northern states.

Dissolute pleasures, and luxury of every kind, form a distinguishing feature in the character of the Carolinians. I censure not the profusion of their tables, it is the profusion of heaven; but to the pleasures of the table they are too much addicted, and they waste too much of that time in sensual indulgence, which they might improve to the advantage of society.

The morning was stormy with showers of rain, which detained me in town till after breakfast. About nine o'clock it cleared up, and I proceeded on my journey. I crossed the bridge at Spear's creek, and after travelling ten miles took dinner with a gentleman who had recently suffered considerably by fire, which had destroyed his out-houses. He entertained me with great hospitality, and appeared to be a man of much information. At night I arrived in Camden, which is about thirty-five miles distant from Columbia.

Camden is a thriving and healthy town in Kershaw county, and the chief town of Camden district. It is regularly laid out, and contains about eight hundred and twenty houses, some of which are built of brick and very handsome. It stands on the east side of the Wateree

market. This town was the scene of two memorable engagements during the revolutionary war: the first on the 16th of August, 1780, between general Gates and lord Cornwallis, in which the hero of Saratoga suffered a defeat. The following year another battle was fought between general Green and lord Rawdon, in which there was one hundred and twenty-six Americans killed, and one hundred taken prisoners, while the killed and wounded of the British amounted to one hundred. Lord Rawdon at this time sallied out of the town, in which he had entrenched himself, and attacked the American camp in three places; he however failed of his principal object, and in a few days evacuated the town.

There is in this town an Episcopal church, besides a court-house and jail, and the public offices for the county. The court for the district of Camden sits here twice in a year.

The next morning it stormed, and a considerable fall of snow had taken place during the night. I rode about eight miles, when I stopped and took breakfast with an elderly gentleman, whose grandmother sat at the table. This woman told me she was ninety-six years of age, and her eye sight was so good that she could read without spectacles. I mention this to prove that South-Carolina is not so unhealthy as has been generally represented, and that instances of longevity are as common here as in many other states.

The storm continuing to increase, I was compelled to put up, and about two o'clock stopped at the house of a Mr. Debruls, where I was well entertained. The roads

The next morning the violence of the storm had in some measure abated, but it still continued to rain, and the weather was so cold that it froze considerably. The roads had now become very bad, and the travelling disagreeable. The thermometer stood at 34° when I started, and the rain froze as fast as it fell. After travelling about eight miles I crossed Wood creek, which is about twelve yards wide, and ten miles from thence came to Lynche's creek, which I had much difficulty in crossing, as the late rain had swelled the creek much beyond its usual dimensions, and the quantities of drift-wood made the passing of it dangerous. About dark I put up at Mrs. Winn's, where I was very well entertained.

The next morning the weather was extremely cold, the wind being from the northwest. At 10 o'clock I crossed West creek, and proceeded through a level and fertile country, which produced plentiful crops of rice, tobacco, and cotton. This part of the country is healthy, the air being pure and salubrious in the summer months. It is much resorted to by invalids from the lower parts of the state. Towards 3 o'clock the weather became stormy and disagreeable, which induced me to put up at the house of Mrs. Cruger, a widow lady, who entertained me with much hospitality.

In the morning I rode forward through a country very similar to what I passed yesterday, and six miles from Mrs. Cruger's crossed the Pedee river. This river has its rise in North Carolina, where it is called Yadkin river. It receives the waters of Lynche's creek, Little Pedee, and [illegible]

about fourteen miles, and stopped at the house of a Mr. Low, who treated me with great politeness.

In the morning I went forward ten miles, and after crossing Lunbee river, proceeded on a good road through a country of a rich soil. The land rises from the north-east into small hills, which are covered with a growth of timber which is large, and in many places very thick. In the evening I put up at Mr. M'May's, having rode about thirty-five miles.

I started very early, and rode ten miles to breakfast with a gentleman to whom I had a letter. He informed me that the soil about here was not the richest, although there were many spots which yielded large and good crops.

The complexion of the inhabitants now began to acquire that yellow sickly cast which is so common to those who reside in the neighbourhood of marshes and swamps, and many of the children had not the appearance of that cleanliness which is the sure preservative of health. I stopped at the house of a woman to enquire the way, and as I rode up to the door was saluted with the barking of dogs, the squalling of the pigs, and the vociferating lungs of about a dozen children who bawled out mamma, mamma, here's a man, and were ready to jump out of their skins.

This is only to be accounted for by a defect in their education; the southern states are much behind the northern and eastern states in this particular. General information is more equally diffused in the latter states, and it is a rare thing to find a child of seven years old that

is to be found where the country is agreeably chequered with towns and villages. Those, however, who reside in large towns, or in the neighbourhood of schools, are generally as anxious about the improvement of their children as any others.

In the evening I arrived at Fayetteville, in North-Carolina, having rode thirty-three miles. My horse had become considerably fatigued, and seemed ready to give out, I therefore deemed it advisable to remain here a few days. I found the accommodations good at Mr. Dufling's, who gave me all the information in his power of the town and its vicinity.

Fayetteville is pleasantly situated on the west side of the northwest branch of Cape Fear river, nearly at the head of navigation, large vessels coming no higher than Wilmington, which is one hundred miles distant. It is the seat of justice for the county of Cumberland, and Fayetteville district. The principal part of the town is situated about a mile from the river. The town is regularly laid out, and contains some very elegant brick buildings, and has four thousand five hundred inhabitants. It has two handsome edifices for the meeting of district and county courts, and the meeting of town officers, citizens, &c. on public occasions. The Freemason's lodge is a large and handsome building, constructed at the expense of the lodge. Some of the principal streets are very spacious, being one hundred feet wide. Near the banks of the river are several tobacco warehouses which have received in one year eight thousand hogsheads of [illegible] in quality to that

distilleries for ardent spirits, and four breweries, besides several extensive tanyards, which do considerable business.

The trade from this town to Wilmington is very considerable. Large quantities of tobacco, wheat, flour, beef, pork, flax-seed, hemp, cotton, butter, lumber, staves, naval stores, &c. are annually sent down.

Lumber and naval stores may be considered as the staple commodities of this state. They are derived from the pitch pine, which is a tall, handsome tree, much superior to the pitch pine of the northern states. From this tree are made pitch, tar, rosin, and lumber, which together constitute one half of the exports of the whole state.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Description of the country, soil, climate, &c. of North-Carolina—Manner in which the inhabitants spend their time.*

THE western, hilly parts of North-Carolina, are as healthy as any part of the United States. The country is fertile, and abounds with springs and rivulets of pure water. Though the days are generally very warm in summer,

and the richness and variety of the vegetable productions which the season affords.

The inhabitants of the flat country near the seacoast, during the summer and autumn, are subject to intermitting complaints, which frequently prove fatal, and also to bilious and nervous symptoms. These fevers are not dangerous to the residents who are temperate, nor to strangers who are prudent. They however, if suffered to continue for any length of time, bring on other disorders, which greatly impair the vigour of the mind, debilitate the constitution, and terminate in death. The countenances of persons living in the flat country, at this season of the year assume a pale yellow cast, occasioned by the prevalence of bilious symptoms.

It has been observed that more of the inhabitants, especially of the men, die during the winter by pleurisies and peripneumonies, than in the warm months by bilious complaints. These pleurisies are brought on by intemperance, and by an imprudent exposure to the weather. Were the inhabitants prudent and cautious in these respects, it has been alleged, and with some degree of probability, that they might in a great measure escape the danger of these fatal diseases. The wearing of flannel next to the skin during the winter, is reckoned an excellent preventative of the diseases incident to this climate.

The inhabitants of this state are mostly planters, and live at the distance of from half a mile to three or four miles from each other, on their plantations. They have a plentiful country, and a natural kindness for society, which re-

when cards, the bottle, and occurrences of the day do not interfere, are the negroes, the prices of indigo, rice, tobacco, &c. Less attention and respect are paid to the women here, than in many other parts of the United States. It has been mentioned by some that respect for the women generally keeps pace with civilization, and that the increase of civilization may be estimated by the respect which is paid by husbands to their wives, and by young men to the young women.

Temperance and industry are not to be reckoned among the virtues of the North-Carolinians. The time which they waste in drinking, idling, and gambling, leaves them very little opportunity to improve their plantations or their minds; the improvement of the former is left to their overseers and negroes, and that of the latter is too often neglected. If the time which is wasted was spent in cultivating the soil and treasuring up knowledge, they might be both wealthy and learned, for they have a productive country, and are by no means destitute of genius.

This, it is to be observed, is given as the general character of the planters in a body: there are many exceptions to this general estimate, men who are eminent for their learning and virtue; but in general, the citizens of North-Carolina who are not employed in better business, spend their time in drinking, gaming, cock-fighting, or horse-racing.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Author takes the stage for Wilmington—Conversation between the passengers—Elizabethtown—Description of the country—Wilmington, N. C.—Departure for Philadelphia—Good accommodations—Arrival at Wilmington, Del.—Take stage for Philadelphia.*

At Fayetteville I sold my horse, determining to take the stage for Wilmington, from which place I expected to find a ready conveyance by water to Philadelphia.

About twelve o'clock the stage arrived at Fayetteville, but was so crowded with passengers that it was impossible for me to carry my baggage, or find room enough for myself to sit down; I therefore resigned my baggage to the care of a boatman, who was to descend the river the next day, and went forward in the stage.

The stage contained eight passengers besides myself and the driver. The greatest part of them were gentlemen who were going to Wilmington for the purpose of selling tobacco and other productions of their plantations, and as most of them were men of property, and of some influence in the part of the country where they belonged, I paid a little attention to their conversation.

The first one which broke silence after I got into the stage was an elderly gentleman, who observed, in reply

"No sir," replied the gentleman to whom this was addressed, "I cannot believe that we have gained any respectability, or raised ourselves in the estimation of foreign powers, by declaring war against a power which was contending for the liberties of the world, and which had, by the number of able negociators she had sent here, endeavoured to make peace on honourable terms."

"Very true," observed another gentleman, "and our government is deserving of censure for declaring war against a nation whose resources were so ample, and whose long experience both by land and sea rendered them almost invincible. We ought to have been glad to have come upon any terms sooner than to have attempted such a thing."

"So, sir," said a gentleman who had hitherto remained silent, "because a nation is powerful, you would tamely submit your liberties to be trampled upon, and yourself to be considered as tributary to a government which is notorious for its ambition, and deride your own government because it had the patriotism to repel the aggressions of such a powerful marauder. Had we been unfortunate during this war, there might have been some excuse for the grumbling of many gentlemen, and the preaching up of the invincibility of the British army and navy; but the brilliant victories which our American tars have obtained over British seamen who have been inured by practice, with the success of our raw militia under generals Brown, Jackson, and others, fully prove

remained silent, and our driving up to the inn at Elizabethtown put an end to the conversation.

Elizabethtown, where we put up for the night, is a small place in Bladen county, about forty-one miles from Fayetteville, and fifty-five from Wilmington. It has a few handsome buildings, a court-house which is a convenient building, and a gaol. The accommodations at Mr. Campbell's were very good.

In the morning, at daylight, we proceeded. The travelling was very good, but our horses were indeed miserable. They were generally composed of broken down creatures which had been rendered unfit for use, and then turned over to go in the stages. This is not the case in the northern states, where there are a number of opposition stages, which make it the interest of the proprietors to provide good horses and careful drivers.

The country through which we passed this day was sandy, and appeared to be of a poor soil. The plantations had not that neat appearance which they have in the hilly parts of the country.

Eighteen miles distant from Elizabethtown, we stopped to breakfast at Mr. M'Gilvary's. At this house I saw a lady who was termed the beauty of North-Carolina. She was on her way to the upper parts of the country for her health, which was on the decline. Her form was truly elegant, and her face might with truth be said to be the model of perfection. Although robbed of that bloom which gives animation to the countenance, her features derived an interesting expression from their paleness,

was elegant, and her politeness truly unaffected. She conversed with ease on many subjects, and seemed to possess that information which is not generally afforded to her sex, and which the time devoted to the toilet almost always excludes.

About three o'clock we arrived in Wilmington, and put up at a house where we had excellent accommodations. I was informed by the landlord that the brig Ploughboy, which had superior accommodations, would in three days sail for Philadelphia, and that the captain of the brig would be at the tavern in a short time. He soon called, and I engaged a passage for Philadelphia.

Wilmington, the capital of Wilmington district, is situated on the east side of the eastern branch of Cape Fear river, and is thirty-four miles distant from the sea. It is pleasantly situated, and contains about four hundred houses, many of which are very handsome. There is a handsome court-house, and other public buildings, in which most of the district business is transacted. There is also an elegant Episcopal church, and some other houses for public worship.

This town carries on a considerable trade with the West-Indies, and with the middle and eastern states. The exports for the year 1812 amounted to 200,538 dollars, above one half of which consisted of lumber and naval stores. They export from this place tar, pitch, turpentine, rosin, Indian corn, boards, scantling, staves, shingles, furs, tobacco, pork, lard, tallow, bees wax, &c.; and they receive from the northern states flour, cheese,

mark from five hundred to one thousand calves in a year. After this no further attention is paid to them until they are fit for slaughter. Their pork is raised with as little trouble; though from being fed on acorns it is apt to become oily unless hardened with corn.

The captain of the Ploughboy was detained by contrary winds and unsettled business until five days after my arrival in Wilmington; during which time a number of passengers arrived, which promised to render the passage very agreeable.

Early on the morning of the fifth day after my arrival, the captain informed me that he should be ready to start in the afternoon of that day. My things were soon arranged and put on board the vessel, and I waited with impatience for the time of our departure. About four o'clock we cleared from the wharf, and proceeded out of the river under easy sail.

The accommodations of the Ploughboy were of a superior kind, every attention having been paid by the captain to procure good servants, and such provision as would be agreeable to passengers. Those persons who wish to go on to the northward by the way of Philadelphia, would find it advantageous to go to Wilmington and from thence to proceed by water, as the conveyance is not only the cheapest, but the best which can be procured.

There were about eighteen passengers on board the Ploughboy, five of whom were ladies. The gentlemen were principall[illegible] [illegible]king pur-

ured with a good wind which carried us along at the te of seven miles an hour.

About dark we passed Brunswick, which is situated ı the west side of Cape Fear river, and was formerly e best built town in the state. It is seventeen miles stant from Wilmington. Formerly it carried on conlerable trade, and was the seat of government; at presıt there are but few houses inhabited.

The second day after our departure from Wilmington ɜ crossed Cape Hatteras straits, which are sometimes ry dangerous, and have proved the ruin of many fine ssels, and the bankruptcy of their owners. This oal has been accurately laid down by a number of skil-l navigators; but experience demonstrates that the rong currents hereabouts, which are only the counterırrents of the gulf stream, shift the sands, and cause em to be continually varying their position.

At present the out shoals, which lie about fourteen iles southwest of the cape, are but of five or six acres extent, and where they are really dangerous to vessels moderate draught, not more than half that number of res. On the shoalest part of these there is at low water out ten feet, and here at times the ocean breaks in a mendous manner, spouting as it were to the clouds, ım the violent agitation of the gulf stream, which touch-the eastern edge of the banks, from whence the devity is sudden, from ten fathoms to no soundings. In ɔderate weather, however, these shoals may be passed er at full tide, if necessary, without much danger, by

of the river, we arrived at the capes of Delaware, and the next day we arrived opposite to Wilmington, which has a very handsome appearance from the water. Most of the water and provision for vessels bound to foreign ports are here taken on board. As the wind was unfair, I judged it most expeditious to go on shore, and found that a majority of the passengers were of the same opinion.

The town of Wilmington is the most considerable in the state of Delaware, and derives considerable advantage from the number of vessels which are employed in going to and from Philadelphia. It is situated on Christiana and Brandywine creeks, which unite, and are four hundred yards wide where they empty into the Delaware river. The principal part of the town is situated on the southwest side of a hill, on the opposite side of which are a number of mills for grain, well known by the name of the Brandywine mills, in which large quantities of flour are manufactured. The Christiana admits vessels of fifteen feet draught of water up to the town, and those of ten feet eight miles further.

Wilmington is laid out on the plan of Philadelphia, and contains upwards of eleven hundred houses and five thousand inhabitants. The houses for public worship are many of them neat and elegant; the principal of which are two for Presbyterians, one for Swedish Lutherans, one for Baptists, one for Friends, and a Methodist chapel.

On the west side of the town stands the poor-house, which is a neat building, one hundred and twenty feet by forty.

schools in this town are well supported, there being above four hundred children who go to the public seminaries in town. The Latin and Greek languages are taught here, and the town can boast of some men of eminent learning and integrity.

I met with an occurrence soon after my arrival in town, which caused me once more to take notice of that perfect spirit of equality which reigns among those respectable people called Quakers. Wanting some information relative to the seminaries of learning, public edifices, &c. I was directed to the house of a respectable gentleman who held a public station in the town. I went to his house, and, on my ringing the bell, a servant girl came to the door, of whom I inquired if her master was within. She stood for a moment, and then replied, "I have got no master." I then inquired if her mistress was at home. To which she answered, "I have got no mistress." "Why, don't you live here, my girl?" said I. "No," she replied, "I only stay here: if you want to see Mr. Willis, I will call him, but he is no master of mine." I apologized for my mistake, and resolved for the future to drop the application of master and mistress.

## CHAP. XL.

*Arrival in Philadelphia—General description of the city.*

whom were residents of Philadelphia, and two of Baltimore. The time was spent very agreeably, an animated discourse being kept up by the party until we arrived in Philadelphia. I put up at the Washington Hotel, and found excellent accommodations.

The city of Philadelphia is the most regular and best built city in the United States. Its streets are most of them straight, spacious, and clean. Its dwellings are principally of brick or stone, and from three to four stories high. It is said, and with justice, to be the best governed city in the world.

The ground plot of the city is an oblong square, and fronts on the west side of the Delaware, where the river is a mile in breadth. The streets which are parallel with the water are named from number one to fifteen, and are all of them paved.

The population of this city, according to the census of 1810, amounted to one hundred and eleven thousand one hundred and thirty-six; but the increase of its population has been very considerable since that time.

The trade of the whole state of Pennsylvania is principally carried on from this city, and its merchants drive a trade to the four quarters of the globe. The elegant construction of their ships has given them a superior advantage in this respect, and many of the ship builders have made themselves independent. Some of the merchants are immensely rich, having capitals of from half a million to three millions of dollars in circulation, and owning from twenty to thirty sail of vessels.

This city [illegible] been several [illegible] with pestilential

Philadelphia is unhealthy; but the indefatigable exertions of the corporation to render the streets perfectly clean, and the judicious experiments of the learned Dr. Rush, have proved that it is of foreign importation, and under judicious health regulations this city is as free from disease as any part of the United States.

In this city there are thirty houses for public worship; five for the Friends, six for Presbyterians and Seceders, two for German Lutherans, one for German Calvinists, seven for Episcopalians, four for Roman Catholics, one for Swedish Lutherans, one for Moravians, one for Covenanters, one for Baptists, one for Africans, and one for Universalists.

A society for alleviating the miseries of prisoners is established in this city, and is an honour to the philanthropy and benevolence of its inhabitants. Under the care of this society, the penitentiary has become a regular manufactory. A variety of the different branches of manufactures are there carried on, and to excite the industry of the prisoners, they receive all they have earned after deducting one shilling and six pence for their daily expenses. The penitentiary of New-York is said to be an improvement of this plan, and the prisoners are said to be better lodged and fed there than they are in this city.

The public library is a valuable institution, and contains upwards of fourteen thousand volumes, besides a valuable collection of rare books, which were presented to the institution by James Logan, Esq. It has a museum attached to it, with a valuable and complete set of philosophical apparatus.

The museum, kept by Mr. Peale, is celebrated all over

other rare natural curiosities. Here the mineralogist will find many specimens of ores, fossils, &c. which are not only extremely rare, but well worthy his attention.

The academy of the fine arts have erected a neat and elegant building, in which are some well executed specimens of painting and sculpture, which do credit to the American artist, and will receive the just tribute of praise from the connoisseur and the man of taste.

The hospital is a large and commodious building, and under such wise and salutary regulations as render it a blessing to the community at large. It is well attended with physicians and surgeons, and the celebrated Dr. Rush has performed many cures in it which have been of much service to the medical world. Attached to this building is a poor-house, which, with the hospital, is said to contain five hundred persons.

Two of the banks which are established in this city are very elegant, particularly that which was formerly considered the United States' bank, now belonging to Mr. Gerard, the front of which is of white marble. The national bank of the United States, it is understood, is to be established at Philadelphia. If another building should be erected as elegant as that which has been mentioned, this city would be famous for the number and beauty of its public buildings.

The markets of this city are excellent, and exceeded by none in the United States in extent, or the variety and abundance of their productions. The beef is reckoned superior to that of New-York, and the variety and excellence of their vegetables are said to be exceeded by none

somely endowed, and well furnished with learned and able professors. This university has probably furnished its full quota of men of eminence on the practical theatre of the United States. Men of high professional character in law, physic, and divinity, have there imbibed the elements of science; and not a few of them have been indebted to it for their whole education.

The masonic hall, lately erected by the grand lodge of Pennsylvania, is a superb and elegant piece of architecture, and reflects credit upon the talents of the American architect. There is a great number of subordinate lodges.

Education receives particular attention in Philadelphia, almost every religious society having a school under its immediate patronage; besides there are respectable academies and schools in different parts of the city, in which the sexes are taught various branches both useful and ornamental. A school for the Africans is likewise established and has received liberal encouragement and support from the inhabitants of this city, and is productive of much good.

"In short," to conclude in the language of a pious and elegant writer, "whether we consider the local situation, the size, the beauty, the variety, and utility of the improvements in mechanics, in agriculture, and manufactures; or the industry, the enterprize, the humanity, and the abilities of the inhabitants of the city of Philadelphia,

## CHAP. XLI.

*Trenton—Princeton—New-Brunswick—Bridgetown—Arrival at Elizabethtown, and conclusion of the author's travels.*

I STAID a few days in Philadelphia, and then took passage in the steam-boat line for New-York. I went on board the steam-boat at 8 o'clock in the morning, and had an agreeable passage up the Delaware to Bordentown, which is pleasantly situated at the mouth of Crosswick's creek, on the east bank of the Delaware river, about twenty-six miles from Philadelphia, and seven miles from Trenton. It is a small thriving place, and has an academy. From Bordentown we proceeded by stage to Trenton.

Trenton is one of the largest towns in the state of New-Jersey, and is pleasantly situated on the east side of the Delaware river, opposite the falls. The river is not navigable above these falls, except for small boats. The town contains about three hundred houses, and about three thousand one hundred inhabitants. The legislature meets here, and there is a handsome court-house for their accommodation. The supreme court sits in this town, and most of the public offices are kept here. The Episcopalians, presbyterians, and Methodists, have each a church for religious worship. There is a flourishing academy in the town, and the [illegible] houses afford ex-

neighbourhood of Trenton, situated on the banks of the Delaware river, which are ornamented with taste and elegance.

The road through part of the country is over a fine turnpike, which has been made at a considerable expense and is kept in excellent repair. It shortens the distance to ninety-five miles from Philadelphia to New-York.

Ten miles from Trenton we passed through Princeton, which is pleasantly situated in Middlesex county. It has the appearance of being a flourishing and well built town. Nassau Hall college is situated in this place, and is one of the best conducted seminaries of education in the United States. It is a handsome stone building one hundred and eighty by fifty-four feet, three stories high, and stands on an elevated and airy situation, commanding an extensive and beautiful prospect. The officers consist of a president, who is a professor of moral philosophy, natural and revealed theology, history, and eloquence; a professor of mathematics, a professor of chemistry, and a sufficient number of tutors. On Sabbath evenings lectures are delivered in the college hall, to the students, on revealed religion, the Jewish and Christian antiquities, and sacred criticism. On Thursday evenings lectures are delivered to a theological class, who are bachelors of arts, on the system of divinity. The same class, on Tuesday evenings, exhibits essays or sermons to the president, for his remarks and criticism. On Friday evenings, in the winter season, the graduates who reside in the college, meet to improve themselves in composition, and to discuss moral or literary subjects. Most of the students belong to the two

Wednesday evenings, for the same purposes. Between these two classes there is an ardent emulation, none being admitted into either who have a bad character. The seminary has turned out some men eminent for their learning and piety.

Sixteen miles from Princeton we passed through New-Brunswick, which is a place of considerable trade. It is situated in Middlesex county, on the southwest side of the Raritan river, on low ground. There are a number of buildings erected on a hill which rises back of the town, which is a pleasant and healthful situation. Queen's college is situated in this town; it is of a secondary rank, and is said to be in a flourishing state. The town contains about seven thousand inhabitants.

The road from New-Brunswick is very good, and the line of stages well supplied with good horses and careful drivers. The accommodations for travelling from Philadelphia to New-York are, in every respect, equal to those on any road in the union, and I think superior to those from Liverpool to London.

We stopped to change horses at Bridgetown, which is more generally known by the name of Rahway. It contains a number of stores filled with an extensive assortment of goods, and appears to be a thriving town. The inhabitants are mostly Friends, and, as is usual with that respectable body of people, they are orderly, industrious, and attentive to business.

At half past one o'clock we arrived at Elizabethtown, and found the steam-boat ready to convey us to New-

productions of Europe, the elegance of its churches, and the excellence of its accommodations for travellers, convinced me that it was a thriving place, and that it might justly be considered as one of the first towns in the state. We were soon hurried on board the steam-boat, which in a short time conveyed us to the city of New-York.

FINIS.

## *SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.*

### ELIZABETHTOWN.

Aaron Ogden
William Chetwood
Nathaniel Williams
Benjamin Wilson
David Corriell
Benjamin Meeker
Daniel Ghort
John Berry
Nehemiah Wade
Joseph Craven
Charles B. Williams
Mervin Hale
Peter Ryerson
James Sanderson
Crowell Mundy
Isaac L. Davis
Jonathan Dayton
Peter Alrich
E. P. Starr
E. I. Dayton
Charles W. Salter
Hallsey Munson
Elijah Day
Zadock Brown
Ambrose Williams
Amos Marcell
Oliver Stiles
John Struck
Thomas Morrell
John C. Rudd
A. Pardo
E. Hall

### NEWARK.

Benjamin Olds
Charles Tay
Lewis Thibou
E. D. Griffin
Wm. H. C. Riggs
M. Forman
Jonathan Robinson
Samuel McLaughlin
John McGinnes
Ebenezer K. Sherwood

### BRIDGETOWN.

Eli Vail
Jonathan Harned
[illegible]
Jeremiah C. Force
[illegible]ster, jun.

## NEW-BRUNSWICK.

Benjamin G. Reed
William Mald
Henry T. Bell
John W. Spur
C. L. Hardenbergh
Deare & Myer
Samuel H. Day
George Boice, jun.

## NASSAU-HALL, PRINCETON.

Archd. I. Findlay
Thomas Wright
T. Purnell
Jabez C. Goble
Theophilus Holcombe
John Breckinridge
Thos. C. Kennedy
Ira C. Whitehead
Peter Ludlow, jun.
Robert Ustick Lang
James S. Nevins
John W. Brunson
Edgar Evertson
Edmund I. Lee
Jos. Van Lear
John McMahon
John S. Condit
Samuel T. Danach
Elijah Sleeck
Martin Agnew Lawrence

## TRENTON.

Zac. Rossell
John K. Potts
Robert Macurdy
Wright Rowal
Richard Rheas
Samuel Stivers

## PHILADELPHIA.

M. Carey (200 copies)
John Hanse
Wm. H. McCrutchen
John Melish
O. M. Pennock
Holbrook & Bartlett
Bernard Dornin Rooks
Harrison Hall

## NEW-YORK.

C. Berard
Nathaniel Smith
John Forbes
John R. Livingston
John Trumbull
A. T. Goodrich
A. Jamison
Doctor Piatt
Noble Reid
Edwin Vallette
Theron Upson
Thomas J. Bailie
George G. Roorbach
John B. Coles
A. T. Hanlon
M. P. Mix
William Deane
Andrew Mickle

James A. Rousseau
Thomas Cyhow
James O'Donnell
Thomas Foote
Charles Carpender
William Jones
Edward Simpson
John Graham
John Darby
Thomas Burke
James D. Oliver
Stephen Lush, jun.
Eleazer Allen
Thomas Hull
William Wheaton
S. C. Parsons
John McKay
John M. Dow
Miss Lecount
George W. Brown
Samuel E. Shotwell
John Watts, jun.
Philip Tabele
William G. Wood
Adoniram Chandler
John J. Wilkie
Francis T. Luqueer
John M Woolsey
I. W. Lester
Lawrence Embree
Charles C. Williams
Walter W. Heyer
Henry King
W. M. Weyman
John D. Keese
Benjamin Dewbry
Henry H. Schieffelin
Daniel Bache
A. Bleeker
Andrew Anderson
J. Contirt
Dr. Dela Mata
G. W. Lathrop

Champion Gilbert
Alexander Cochran
Frederick Foster
Thomas M. Weeks
Charles L. Jones
Thomas Strong
George Riker
James Tomkins
James Beard
Farman Cheesman
Catharine Sullivan
David Munson
Uzal Osborn
Thomas M. Flanrey
Samuel Richards, jun.
Ephraim E. Ford
Peter A. Mesier
Marcus Jacob
Eph. Porter
Jonas Harrison
I. W. Cook
John Ray
John Yates Cebra
Benjamin Thomas
Samuel Post
Reuben Leggett
Augustus G. Mumford
James Flim
John S. Murphy
M. Morrisson
Matthew O'Connor
Simon Backus
Sally Ann Gedney
Carington Wilson, jun.
Robert Evans
James Culbertson
Aaron B. Woodruff
Samuel Kelley, jun.
Samuel Wigton
J. Boter
Isaac Brown
George L. Storer
Alexander V. Mister

Peter Roosevelt
Joel West
Thomas S. Uffington
Humphrey Galbraith
David S. Cumming
W. H. Van Dalsend
Jacob K. Brown
E. L. Griswold
T. B. Van Brunt
C. Hopkins
Samuel Lockman
Matthew Gordon
John S. Mitchell
A. M. Stannard
Peter W. Gale
John Clark, jun.
Jacob B. Byers
Naphtali Judah
T. H. Liley
N. G. Malcolm
Edward McGuy
Josiah E. Ransford
John Guines
John R. Seaman
Samuel A. Kane
Robert Peckham
Wm. W. Dyckman, jun.
John Gauler
Judah Zuntz
Prior & Dunning (5 copies)
William Keese
Daniel Edsall
R. Riker
Wm. Thomas
A. C. Vandyck
Robert Emmet
Isaac L. Kip
John Blair
Peter Nelson
Mrs. Hannah Lee
Samuel Whetten
James Deniston
John M. Cracken
David Park
Timothy I. Hooker
John S. Wade
William R. Sheys
Robert Gilchrist
James Butler
E. Childs
P. W. Gallaudet
John H. Martinstein
Edmund M. Blunt
Alexander W. Leval
I. P. Newman
T. Stevenson, jun.
J. C. Redmond
Isaac Brown
Benjamin Lord
Henry Bicker
John Young
Thomas Rutter

## WEST-POINT.

A. Partridge
W. S. Eveleth
Henry Giles
E. Butler
William Malcolm
Zebina J. D. Kinsley
John Pratt
John M. Gough
A. Underhill
David S. Pearce
John Norcross
James T. Swift

## ALBANY.